“An Awakening” is a book that addresses very important Issues and Biblical Tenets of the Word of God with the foundation of the veracity of the Scriptures. The Scriptures will unlock the door for those who do not know for sure if they have been born again or for those who do not understand what the term “born again” represents. It will abet the new and elderly Christians who have been unaware or have misunderstood the important issues and doctrines of the bible and build a firm foundation of faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. “An Awakening” is a reference study book that has not been professionally edited. It is to help those seeking scriptural references in relation to the issues brought forth in the book.

If any questions about the book or want to order more books please call me at 5174741950 or email me at houle@umich.edu
AN AWAKENING

By Rodney Houle

CONTENTS

1. The Scriptures
2. Jesus Christ the only Begotten Son of God & Mediator
3. Bodily Resurrection of Christ
4. Trinity (God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit)
5. Salvation by Grace through Faith Alone
6. Repentance (A change of mind)
7. Faith (Counted for Righteousness)
8. Justification (Accepted in the Beloved)
9. Regeneration (Partakers of His Divine Nature)
10. Adoption (A Son not a servant)
11. Sanctification (Called unto Holiness)
12. Glorification (Called unto His eternal glory)
13. Church
15. Prayer
16. Satan
17. Hell
18. Angels
19. God's Delegated Authority
21. Christian's Attitude towards War
22. Creation
23. Israel A Nation
24. The Invitation

INTRODUCTION: Ephesians 5:14 "Wherefore he saith, Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light." 1Corinthians 15:34 "Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak this to your shame."

There are so many religions today. And those who teach these religions convince some that it is the sincere truth. So those who hear it don't search the Scriptures to see for themselves if it is lie or if it is the truth, but they just go along with there emotions because it feels good, feels comfortable and they feel accepted by others. Emotions are not to be our guide in life. We need God’s Word to be our guidance. It cannot be emphasized enough or to often that in America today true born again Christians need to know why and what they believe. They need to be on guard against false doctrines. Colossians 2:8, "Beware lest any man spoil you through
philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.”

In America today there is a bombardment from T. V. women and men preachers; media; television programs; Hollywood movies; secular music and secular books that can highly influence how you believe, and I might add that family and friends can highly influence someone’s belief in accepting a teaching that is contrary to God's Word.

Did you realize that in 1892 the United States Supreme Court unanimously ruled that America was “a Christian nation”? Well, since that time this so called Christian nation has fell into oblivion of what Christian means, hasn’t it? Let me just give you some staggering statistics that I have come across in research that has awakened me to the fact that Christians in America are not proclaiming what they supposedly believe. Did you know that a survey by the Alan Guttmacher Institute in New York found that 18% of abortion patients that describe themselves as born-again or evangelical Christians, nearly one in five who murder their children profess to have faith in Jesus Christ, and in another poll by Barna Research Group found that millions of believers who supposedly confess Jesus as Lord yet they think He sinned while here on earth. There are millions in America confess they belong to Jesus Christ, but they do not attend Bible believing churches or their lives do not match their claims. The most disturbing statistic I have come across recently is that only 2% of Christians share the Gospel with others. How does that make you feel? I just recently found a study done by Dr. Peter Ehrlich a pediatric surgeon at the University Michigan Level 1 Pediatric Trauma Center concerning 14 to 17 year old children. The facts he found are astounding and are sad because 40% of the pediatric trauma patients ages 14 – 17 screened for substance abuse tested positive, 29% tested positive for opiates such as opium or heroin, 11.2% tested positive for alcohol, and 20% tested positive for marijuana. Another poll presented of what teens believe about Biblical Tenets projected that 63% don’t believe Jesus is the only begotten Son of God. 58% believe all faiths teach equally valued truths; 51% don’t believe Jesus rose from the dead; 65% don’t believe Satan is a real entity; 68% don’t believe that Holy Spirit is a real entity and 70% don’t believe an absolute moral truth exists, (“Ibid” pg. 51.) In the book “The Day America Told the Truth” by James Patterson and Peter Kim says that 91% of Americans lie regularly at work and home, 86% lie regularly to parents, and 75% lie regularly to friends. 92% own a bible, but only 11% read it daily. A Roger Center poll found that 61% believes premarital sex is not morally wrong. The Los Angeles Times reported a Barna poll on October 24, 2003 and noted that “one out of ten born-again Christians believe in reincarnation, and half believe a person can earn salvation based on good deeds even without accepting Christ as the way to eternal life.” (1) The statement you just read is against Biblical Tenets of the Word of God.

These are only a few staggering results done by studies and polls that reveal that America professing to be a so called Christian society is not adhering to the doctrines, standards, values and principals that are taught in the Word of God. And what is really sad many do not know or have a clue what is said in the bible about such issues.

Are you a professing new born again Christian? Are you a professing born again Christian of many years? Are you a professing born again Christian that has grown apathetic towards the doctrines and ethics of God’s Word? Maybe you are not a Christian it all and have THOUGHT you were because you have been baptized or belong to a certain denomination. “An
Awakening” is to awaken you to see the importance to know why you believe what you believe because you’re ETERNITY DEPENDS UPON THAT FACT! Remember that salvation is all of the grace of God, damnation is the will of man do not expect pardon till you plead guilty. You must know what God’s Word says, not what your intellectual mind believes. Have you been awakened to the truth that you need to be Born Again? Do you know the basic doctrinal truths of God’s Word? Have you been rooted and grounded in God’s Word so you can live for Him faithfully? Each chapter will give you something to abet you to awaken you to truths that you have been unaware of and will help you to be born again; know the basic doctrinal truths; be rooted and grounded in God’s Word to faithfully serve Him and will change your wavering faith to an unwavering faith.

All the subjects discussed in this book have the foundation of God’s Word. God’s Word is Truth and His Son Jesus Christ is the Way and the Truth. John 14:6 “Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” I have in each subject given many Bible verses so you can read them and not have to look them up, but, I would like to encourage you to search them out for yourself in your Bible. All Scripture used is from the King James Bible.

The fifth book of the bible called Deuteronomy is a book of repetition, which is the way God teaches. Repetition is the way to get results. It is the key to learning. I’m a sport enthusiast and repetition is used in teaching basic fundamentals of each sport that is played to get the results that the coaches are looking for and that result is, to win the game. You have heard the cliché “practice makes perfect”. God’s Word teaches us this way and you will see Scripture used over and over again as you read to express a point that you might learn, and the results will be that we apply His Word to our lives, living each day for Him. Remember that “An Awakening” is not an exhaustive study of the issues and doctrines of the bible. It is just to give the new and elderly Christian a foundation for why and what they believe.

CHAPTER 1
THE SCRIPTURES

This chapter will present some general information to lay the foundation for the study about the Scriptures. I pass the torch of study to you to continue the responsibility to study for yourself on this subject the Scriptures.

Christians need to know that the Word of God is trustworthy and reliable and can be trusted more than our own views, personnel opinions, values and culture.

It is important for Christians to defend the Inerrancy of Scripture by several foundations. The reason inerrancy is so vital to the Bible authority is that without inerrancy, this authority is
baseless. There would be no foundation of truth from the Scriptures. Can you imagine if the contractor who is building your home, makes errors while digging and pouring the foundation of your beautiful home? What would happen? That home would be not safe or trusted structurally for the future. Inerrancy is taught in scripture overall, the scriptures are historically reliable, geographically reliable, archeological findings which correspond to scripture, prophetically correct, consistently reliable. Jesus Christ even claimed the scriptures were inerrant. If you have never read the Bible and make the statement that you do not believe that the Bible is the Word of God you are very foolish and ignorant of making such a statement. You haven’t even read it!! Pick it up and read first then give your evaluation.

Let me now give you some history of the Bible. The list of recognized Scriptures in the Church is known as “the Canon.” In classical Greek the word “canon” signifies properly, “a straight rod,” “a carpenter's rule,” “a cane,” or “Rod of Measurement.” Christians look at it as the “Written rule of Faith,” it is a fundamental standard. With reference to the Scriptures, the term “canon” indicates the collection of books accepted as authoritative; with reference to church decisions it indicates church law or doctrine. The Protestant canon includes the 39 books of the Hebrew Bible “the Old Testament” and the 27 books referred to as “The New Testament.” The Catholic canon includes these books as well as a dozen others that are found in the Greek version of the Hebrew Bible. These dozen books were turned down as being canonical because some of the writings were totally out of harmony, found to be legendary, spurious and inconsistent with Scriptures. Though many other Jewish and Christian books have been written over the last few millennia, only these 66 books are considered authoritative. Why? Because there were three theories proposed to explain and define the canon. 1. The books must have apostolic authority, that is, they must have been written either by apostles themselves, who were eyewitnesses to what they wrote about, or close associates of the apostles. 2 Timothy 3:16 “All scripture is given by the inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:” 2. The criterion of conformity to what was called the rule of faith that is, was the document congruent with the basic Christian tradition that the church recognized as normative. 3. It was the criterion of whether a document had had continuous acceptance and usage by the church at large. The Canonical New Testament Books were those, which came to be generally recognized by the Churches as the Genuine and Authentic Writings of the Apostolic Authority. The canon of Scripture has preserved, shaped and defined the community of faith. We know it to be normative because it continues to convict and correct us. The Scriptures calls us to repentance towards God, faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and instructs us in righteousness.

Our forefathers believed in the Bible, the Holy Scriptures. Andrew Jackson said, “That book, sir, is the rock on which our republic rests.” Daniel Webster said, “If we abide by the principles taught in the Bible. Our country will go on prospering and to prosper; but if we and our prosperity neglect its instructions and authority, no man can tell how sudden a catastrophe may overwhelm us and bury all our glory in profound obscurity.” Patrick Henry said “It cannot be emphasized too strongly or too often that this great Nation was founded, not by religionists, but by Christians, not by religions, but on the gospel of Jesus Christ. For this very reason peoples of other faiths have been afforded, asylum, prosperity, and freedom of worship here.”

The name for the Word of God “Bible” to designate the “Book of books” is providential. It admirably expresses the unity of the Word of God. The English word Bible came originally from the name of the papyrus or byblos reed used extensively in antiquity making scrolls and books. Byblos (O.T. Gebal) was so named because, in that Phoenician seaport, trade and
manufacture in papyrus writing material was carried on. Papyrus rolls grown in the Delta of Egypt were shipped to Gebal. The word Bible comes from the old French through the Latin biblia, from the Greek. The Greek Christians called their sacred Scriptures ta Biblia, “the Books.” When the title was transferred to the Latin it was rendered in the singular and through Old French came into English as “Bible.”

The Scriptures were written over a period of 1,600 years by over 40 authors without one contradiction. The original manuscripts (Psalms 119:89 “For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven.”) of all the New Testament books, as far as is known, have been lost. But those, who had a vision for the future, saw how vital it was to have the copies of these precious writing to be made from the very first, for other churches; and copies of copies, after generation after generation, as the older ones wore out. In the book “The Case for Christ” by Lee Strobel (a known atheist now converted Christian) interviewed several world known Theologians who gave a wealth of evidence for the Bible. One of the interviews was with eighty four year old Dr. Bruce Metzger who gave a mountain of historical evidence for the Bible. He has authored or edited fifty books, has numerous works translated in other languages and in 1969 served as the resident scholar at Tyndale House, Cambridge, England. Dr. Metzger presented historical information concerning the Scriptures. “We have what are called uncial manuscripts which are written in all- capital Greek letters, Today we have 306 of these, several dating back as early as the third century. The most important are Codex Sinaiticus, (discovered in 1844 and 1859 and dates back to about A.D. 350) which is the only complete New Testament in uncial letters, (and a large part of the O.T.) and Codex Vaticanus, (has been in the Vatican Library since 1481 and contains 759 leaves, 142 belonging to the N.T.) which is not quite complete. Both date to about A.D. 340. A new style of writing, more cursive in nature, emerged in roughly A.D. 800. It’s called minuscule, and we have 2,856 of these manuscripts. Then there are also lectionaries, which contain New Testament Scripture in the sequence it was to be read in the early church at appropriate times of the year. A total of 2,403 of these have been cataloged. That puts a grand total of Greek manuscripts at 5,664. In addition to the Greek documents, there are thousands of other ancient New Testament manuscripts in other languages. There are 8,000 to 10,000 Latin Vulgate manuscripts, plus a total of 8,000 in Ethiopic, Slavic, and Armenian. In all, there are about 24,000 manuscripts in existence.”

Blomberg gave historical evidence which is very reliable. “Again, the oldest and probably most significant testimony comes from Papias, who in about A.D. 125 specifically affirmed that Mark had carefully and accurately recorded Peter’s eyewitness observations. In fact, he said Mark ‘made no mistake’ and did not include ‘any false statement.’ And Papias said Matthew had preserved the teachings of Jesus as well.” Then Irenaeus, writing about A.D. 180, confirmed the traditional authorship. In fact, here-,” he read Irenaeus’s words. “Matthew published his own Gospel among the Hebrews in their own tongue, when Peter and Paul were preaching the Gospel in Rome and founding the church there. After their departure, Mark, the disciple and interpreter of Peter, himself, handed down to us in writing the substance of Peter’s preaching. Luke, the follower of Paul, set down in a book the Gospel preached by his teacher. Then John, the disciple of the Lord, who also leaned on his breast, himself, produced his Gospel while he was living at Ephesus in Asia.” With the facts of historical writings by Papias and Irenaeus we can concur that the Gospels were recorded on the basis of either direct or indirect eyewitness testimony. Blomberg himself said that we can confidently agree and be assured that the Gospels were based on this testimony.

I can only mention a couple excerpts from Lee Strobel’s book “The Case for Christ” in this chapter as it would be too lengthy because of the evidence revealed in his book is so numerous.
“The Case for Christ” is a must read book to gather more information about the reliability of the Scriptures in its authenticity. I highly recommend it.

Christians need to know that the Old Testament of the Bible is the birth of a Nation (Israel) and an account of a Nation (Israel). It is the story of the Hebrew Nation dealing largely with events and urgent affairs of its own times. But all through the story there runs an unceasing expectancy and provision of the coming of One Majestic Person, who will Rule and Bless the Whole World. This Person, long before He arrived, came to be known as the Messiah. There is a Golden, Purple, Blue, White, and Red threads that wind throughout the Old Testament and all five signify the Lord Jesus Christ, the gold for His Deity (God the Son), the purple for His Royalty (King of Kings), the blue for His Heavenliness (Christ came down from heaven, He went back to heaven and sits at the right hand of the Father), the white for His Holiness (Christ was sinless), and the red for His Savior-hood (Christ the Lamb of God) who shed His blood for the redemption of sin. You would observe these colors when studying the construction of the Tabernacle in *Exodus* 24 – 31 which is a wonderful endeavor. The Old Testament I believe in part is a neglected book of study. There are so many wonderful symbols, pictures, types, hints, fore-shadows, and predictions that refer to the Lord Jesus Christ the Messiah. The Old Testament was written to create an anticipation of, and pave the way for, the coming of Christ. The Old Testament is the inspired introduction to the New Testament which is the birth of a Man (Jesus Christ) and an account of a Man (Jesus Christ). The New Testament Gospels record His eternal being, human ancestry, birth, life and ministry, death, burial, resurrection and ascension. The New Testament Epistles develop the Tenets (doctrines) of the Church, and the mission, purpose, order, privileges, and duties of the Church. Christians need to take the bible off the shelf and blow the dust off and open the love letter that God has given us and read and study it.

Archeology provides further evidence for the veracity of the Scriptures. Archeologists have made more than 25,000 discoveries related to the Old Testament and found exactly what the Bible talks about in every case.

Although some people claim the Bible isn’t accurate because it has been copied so many times by different people that this amounts to a smokescreen. Between 1947 and 1956, handwritten copies of every book of the Old Testament except for one were found in caves of Israel (*The Dead Sea Scrolls*). These copies of Bible books reflect the same thing we read in the Scriptures today.

It hasn't been that long ago that a few religious denominations taught others that they could not understand the Bible and should not read it, as they would misinterpret the scriptures, but, to listen to those who would know how to interpret it. Then they taught that not all of the books of the Bible could be taken literally because they were just stories. These denominations still teach such things to this day. I do believe that this has been the biggest lie told since the serpent (the devil) lied to Eve in the Garden of Eden. The Holy Spirit indwells in the true Born Again believer. The Holy Spirit will give him discernment of interpreting the Scriptures. *Romans* 2:9 - 14 “But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man (a person not born again) receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” What a blessing to know that you can know that the Holy Spirit will teach you when you search for the truth in God’s Word.
I believe that the Bible is God revealing Himself to man, not man revealing himself to God. God has revealed Himself in His creation. Romans 1:19 – 20 “Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shewed it unto them. For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:” God has revealed Himself in His righteousness and in Christ Jesus. Romans 1:17, 3:21 – 25, “For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.” “Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin. But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference: For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God; Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;” Hebrews 1:1 – 8 “God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets, Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds; Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him. And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire. But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever a and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.” God has revealed Himself in our conscience. Romans 2:14 – 16 “For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another; In the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel.” Christ is the center and heart of the Bible, the center and heart of history, is the center and heart of lives of those that have accepted Him as Lord and Savior. Our eternal destiny is in His hands. Our acceptance or rejection of Him determines for each of us heaven or hell. The Bible is where you find who you are, what you are, and where you are headed. The Bible is where you find the truth about all the cultural issues of today. It is where you find the absolute standards of God. It is the answer to what is wrong and right. The Bible is the absolute truth to all our areas of life. It is the source to go to when we need direction. There are Christians in the world today that have forsaken the Word of God in their lives. Why? We forget what God has done for us and let entertainment, work or business whatever we choose it to be to run our lives. This is the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes and the pride of life, the temptations of Satan that keeps us from God's Word.

Here are some Scriptures that I base my belief that the sixty-six books of the Old and New Testaments as originally written were, God breathed, verbally inspired in every part, not just thoughts and ideas of men. I believe God, who is Truth, communicated through Spirit controlled men so that the Scriptures are without error and therefore is the authority in all that they teach and in all matters they touch on. God Himself superintended and directed and dictated the writing of the Bible books. 2 Timothy 3:16 - 17 “All scripture is given by the inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.” 2 Peter 1:19 - 21
“We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in you hears: Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.” Hebrews 1:1 “God who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets.” Romans 15:4 “For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope.” Psalms 119:160 “Thy word is true from the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments endureth forever.” Psalms 119:9, 11 “Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? By taking heed thereto according to thy word.” Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might sin against thee.”

I believe that the Bible is the supreme revelation of God's will for man and constitute the only infallible guide for faith and life. Matthew 4:4 “But he answered and said, it is written, man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.” 2 Timothy 2:15 “Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.” 2 Timothy 3:15 “And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.” Proverbs 30:5 - 6 “Every word of God is pure; He is a shield unto them that put their trust in Him. Add thou not unto His words, lest He reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.” Acts 17:11 “These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so.” Romans 10:17 “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.” 1 Peter 1:23, 25 “Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth forever. But the word of the Lord endureth forever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.” 1 Thessalonians 2:13 “For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because when you received the word of God which you heard of us, you received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.” John 20:31 “But these are written that you might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you might have life through his name.” Hebrews 4:12 “For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.” In reading these verses it is assured that the Bible commands you to read, study, know, and believe that all that is written is true. How can anyone including me neglect to read such a great book with so many precious privileges and promises from God?
CHAPTER 2

JESUS CHRIST THE ONLY BEGOTTEN SON OF GOD

AND MEDIATOR

I would like to remind you that in Chapter 4 “The Trinity” will cover this same subject concerning the Lord Jesus Christ as the Only Begotten Son of God, so it will be repetitious teaching which is abetting for all of us when it comes to Scripture.

I believe that the Lord Jesus Christ is the eternal Son of God, was conceived by the Holy Spirit and born of the virgin Mary, as no other man was ever, nor can be born of a woman. He is “God manifest in the flesh.” He lived a life of absolute sinlessness and in His blood shed death made a full and vicarious (was our substitute) atonement for our sins, dying not as a martyr, but as a voluntary substitute in the sinner's place. He rose bodily on the third day, and ascended into heaven where He now sits at the right hand of the Father as our High Priest, interceding and preparing a place for us. John 14:3 “And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again,
and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.” He shall appear in the air to rapture His saints to escape the seven years of great tribulation, and shall come again with the saints to set up the throne of David and establish His millennial (1000 years) kingdom. See Revelation chapters 19 – 22 for more information.

The Bible mentions five times that Christ is the Only Begotten Son of God. John 1:14 “And the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth.” This indicates that, as the Son of God, He was the sole representative of the Being and character of the One who sent Him. John 1:18 “No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, He hath declared Him.” 1 John 4:9 “In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent His only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through Him.” John 3:16, 18 “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.” He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.” The Only Begotten when used of the Son, it is in the sense of unoriginated relationship. The begetting is not an event of time, however it is remote, but a fact irrespective of time. Jesus Christ did not become the Son of God but necessarily and eternally IS the Son of God. He is the person that possesses every attribute of God. (4) Colossians 1:15 - 17 “Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature: For by him all things were created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him and for him. And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.” John 1:1 - 3 “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.” Only God can create, only God can be before all things, and only God can have all things consist. Jesus Christ is God incarnate as revealed in the Scriptures. In Matthew 1:23 “Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Immanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.” Zechariah 2:10 “Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion, for, lo, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord.” Isaiah 43:10 “No God was formed before me, nor will be after me, I, I am Jehovah, and there is no other Savior but me.” According to this verse Jesus Christ is God our Savior the Only Begotten Son of God. Colossians 2: 9 “For in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily.” Mark 12:36 “For David himself said by the Holy Ghost, The Lord said to my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.” Hebrews 1:13 - 14 “But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation.” John 10: 28 - 31 “And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand. My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand. I and my Father are one. Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.” The Jews were going to stone Jesus because He claimed He was God.

I will now present the evidence that will be unveiled from the Word of God the message that Jesus Christ is necessarily and eternally the Son of God. Let us consider His miracles. They were extraordinary beyond human understanding or logic. Remember these are only a few verses I am presenting to you because there are many more. And if you read the Synoptic Gospels you will read of the many miracles that Jesus performed. 

Jesus had control over
nature: Mark 4:37 - 39 “And there arose a great storm of wind, and the waves beat into the ship, so that it was now full. And he was in the hinder part of the ship, asleep on a pillow: and they awake him, and say unto him, Master, carest thou not that we perish? And he arose, and rebuked the wind, and said unto the sea, Peace, be still. And the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.” Jesus healed the sick and the demon – possessed: Matthew 8:1 – 3, 6 – 17 “And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. And Jesus put forth his hand, and touched him, saying, I will; be thou clean. And immediately his leprosy was cleansed. And when Jesus was entered into Capernaum, there came unto him a centurion, beseeching him, And saying, Lord, my servant lieth at home sick of the palsy, grievously tormented. And Jesus saith unto him, I will come and heal him. The centurion answered and said, Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldest come under my roof: but speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this man, Go, and he goeth; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth it. When Jesus heard it, he marvelled, and said to them that followed, Verily I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel. And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven. But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. And Jesus said unto the centurion, Go thy way; and as thou hast believed, so be it done unto thee. And his servant was healed in the selfsame hour. And when Jesus was come into Peter’s house, he saw his wife’s mother laid, and sick of a fever. And he touched her hand, and the fever left her: and she arose, and ministered unto them. When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick: That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.” Jesus healed the blind: This is a very interesting anecdote surrounding Jesus’ miracle of the blind man that takes place and how it reveals that Jesus is the Son of God. John 9:1 – 38 “And as Jesus passed by, he saw a man which was blind from his birth. And his disciples asked him, saying, Master, who did sin, this man, or his parents, that he was born blind? Jesus answered, Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents: but that the works of God should be made manifest in him. I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day: the night cometh, when no man can work. As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world. When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay, And said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing. The neighbours therefore, and they which before had seen him that he was blind, said, Is not this he that sat and begged? Some said, This is he: others said, He is like him: but he said, I am he. Therefore said they unto him, How were thine eyes opened? He answered and said, A man that is called Jesus made clay, and anointed mine eyes, and said unto me, Go to the pool of Siloam, and wash: and I went and washed, and I received sight. Then said they unto him, Where is he? He said, I know not. They brought to the Pharisees him that aforetime was blind. And it was the sabbath day when Jesus made the clay, and opened his eyes. Then again the Pharisees also asked him how he had received his sight. He said unto them, He put clay upon mine eyes, and I washed, and do see. Therefore said some of the Pharisees, This man is not of God, because he keepeth not the sabbath day. Others said, How can a man that is a sinner do such miracles? And there was a division among them. They say unto the blind man again, What sayest thou of him, that he hath opened thine eyes? He said, He is a prophet. But the Jews did not believe concerning him, that he had been blind, and received his sight, until they
called the parents of him that had received his sight. And they asked them, saying, Is this your son, who ye say was born blind? how then doth he now see? His parents answered them and said, We know that this is our son, and that he was born blind: But by what means he now seeth, we know not; or who hath opened his eyes, we know not: he is of age; ask him: he shall speak for himself. These words spake his parents, because they feared the Jews: for the Jews had agreed already, that if any man did confess that he was Christ, he should be put out of the synagogue. Therefore said his parents, He is of age; ask him. Then again called they the man that was blind, and said unto him, Give God the praise: we know that this man is a sinner. He answered and said, Whether he be a sinner or no, I know not: one thing I know, that, whereas I was blind, now I see. Then said they to him again, What did he to thee? how opened he thine eyes? He answered them, I have told you already, and ye did not hear: wherefore would ye hear it again? will ye also be his disciples? Then they reviled him, and said, Thou art his disciple; but we are Moses' disciples. We know that God spake unto Moses: as for this fellow, we know not from whence he is. Now we know that God heareth not sinners: but if any man be a worshipper of God, and doeth his will, him he heareth. Since the world began was it not heard that any man opened the eyes of one that was born blind? If this man were not of God, he could do nothing. They answered and said unto him, Thou wast altogether born in sins, and dost thou teach us? and they cast him out. Jesus heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, Dost thou believe on the Son of God? He answered and said, Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him? And Jesus said unto him, Thou hast both seen him, and it is he that talketh with thee. And he said, Lord, I believe. And he worshipped him.” Jesus’ miracle accomplishments: “Matthew 15:30, 31 “And great multitudes came unto him, having with them those that were lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Jesus’ feet; and he healed them: In somuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel.” Jesus raised the dead: John 11:14 – 45 “Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead. And I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, to the intent ye may believe; nevertheless let us go unto him. Then said Thomas, which is called Didymus, unto his fellow disciples, Let us also go, that we may die with him. Then when Jesus came, he found that he had lain in the grave four days already. Now Bethany was nigh unto Jerusalem, about fifteen furlongs off: And many of the Jews came to Martha and Mary, to comfort them concerning their brother. Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Jesus was coming, went and met him: but Mary sat still in the house. Then said Martha unto Jesus, Lord, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died. But I know, that even now, whatsoever thou wilt ask of God, God will give it thee. Jesus saith unto her, Thy brother shall rise again. Martha saith unto him, I know that he shall rise again in the resurrection at the last day. Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this? She saith unto him, Yea, Lord: I believe that thou art the Christ, the Son of God, which should come into the world. And when she had so said, she went her way, and called Mary her sister secretly, saying, The Master is come, and calleth for thee. As soon as she heard that, she arose quickly, and came unto him. Now Jesus was not yet come into the town, but was in that place where Martha met him. The Jews then which were with her in the house, and comforted her, when they saw Mary, that she rose up hastily and went out, followed her, saying, She goeth unto the grave to weep there. Then when Mary was come where Jesus was, and saw him, she fell down at his feet, saying unto him, Lord, if thou hadst
been here, my brother had not died. When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping which came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled, And said, Where have ye laid him? They said unto him, Lord, come and see. Jesus wept. Then said the Jews, Behold how he loved him! And some of them said, Could not this man, which opened the eyes of the blind, have caused that even this man should not have died? Jesus therefore again groaning in himself cometh to the grave. It was a cave, and a stone lay upon it. Jesus said, Take ye away the stone. Martha, the sister of him that was dead, saith unto him, Lord, by this time he stinketh: for he hath been dead four days. Jesus saith unto her, Said I not unto thee, that, if thou wouldest believe, thou shouldest see the glory of God? Then they took away the stone from the place where the dead was laid. And Jesus lifted up his eyes, and said, Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me. And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth. And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go. Then many of the Jews which came to Mary, and had seen the things which Jesus did, believed on him."

Jesus feeds five thousand: John 6:1 – 14 After these things Jesus went over the sea of Galilee, which is the sea of Tiberias. And a great multitude followed him, because they saw his miracles which he did on them that were diseased. And Jesus went up into a mountain, and there he sat with his disciples. And the passover, a feast of the Jews, was nigh. When Jesus then lifted up his eyes, and saw a great company come unto him, he saith unto Philip, Whence shall we buy bread, that these may eat? And this he said to prove him: for he himself knew what he would do. Philip answered him, Two hundred pennyworth of bread is not sufficient for them, that every one of them may take a little. One of his disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, saith unto him, There is a lad here, which hath five barley loaves, and two small fishes: but what are they among so many? And Jesus said, Make the men sit down. Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, in number about five thousand. And Jesus took the loaves; and when he had given thanks, he distributed to the disciples, and the disciples to them that were set down; and likewise of the fishes as much as they would. When they were filled, he said unto his disciples, Gather up the fragments that remain, that nothing be lost. Therefore they gathered them together, and filled twelve baskets with the fragments of the five barley loaves, which remained over and above unto them that had eaten. Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Jesus did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world." Jesus feeds four thousand: Matthew 15:30 – 38 "And great multitudes came unto him, having with them those that were lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and

cast them down at Jesus' feet; and he healed them: Insomuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the God of Israel. Then Jesus called his disciples unto him, and said, I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way. And his disciples say unto him, Whence should we have so much bread in the wilderness, as to fill so great a multitude? And Jesus saith unto them, How many loaves have ye? And they said, Seven, and a few little fishes. And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground. And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake them, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken meat that was left seven baskets full. And they that did eat were four thousand men, beside women and children." I would like to end here with the miracles of Jesus revealing himself as the Son of God and let John sum it all up in these verses. John 21:24 – 25 "This is the disciple
which testifieth of these things, and wrote these things: and we know that his testimony is true. And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written. Amen.” There is enough evidence for me, to give me complete convincing confidence that Jesus is necessarily and eternally the Son of God.

**JESUS CHRIST IS OUR MEDIATOR**

First and foremost we need to know the meaning of this word **mediator**. In the Greek the word signifies “a go – between” or “to go.” In the N.T. it is used in two ways. 1. One who mediates between two parties with a view to producing peace. 2. One who acts as a guarantee so as to secure something which otherwise would not be obtained. The first meaning of **mediator** is more than mere mediator – ship. We can see this in 1 Timothy 2:5 “For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.” It views it as for the salvation of men necessitated that the Mediator should Himself possess the nature and attributes of Him (God) towards whom He acts, and should likewise participate in the nature of those (Man) whom He acts (sin apart); only by being possessed both of Deity and humanity could He comprehend the claims of the one and the needs of the other; further, the claims and the needs could be met only by One who, Himself (Jesus Christ) being proved sinless, would offer Himself an expiatory sacrifice on behalf of men.(4) We also see a similar word “advocate” in 1 John 2:1 “My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an **advocate** with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:” The word “advocate” signifies “called to one’s side, or “to one’s aid,” it is primarily a verbal adjective, and suggests the capability or adaptability for giving aid. It was used in a court of justice to denote a legal assistance, counsel for the defense, and an advocate; then, generally one who pleads another’s cause, and intercessor, advocate. (5) Jesus Christ the Son of Man (His humanity), the Lamb of God (His expiatory sacrifice on the behalf of men) and the Son of God (His Deity) is the only mediator, advocate between God and men in this world. A true born again believer cannot look to any other person but Christ to be their mediator. There are those that claim there is another mediator in this world but this is false. The second meaning is the one who acts as a guarantee so as to secure something which otherwise would not be obtained. Christ is the Surety of the better covenant,” “the new covenant,” guaranteeing its terms for His people. Hebrews 8:6 “But now hath He obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also He is the **mediator** of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.” Hebrews 9:15 “And for this cause He is the **mediator** of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.” Hebrews 12:24 “And to Jesus the **mediator** of the new covenant, and to the blood sprinkling, that speaketh better things than of Abel.” A mediator can be the only one that can make intercession for us. Romans 8:34 “Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.” Hebrews 7:25 “Wherefore He is able also to save them to the uttermost that come to God by Him seeing He ever liveth to make intercession for them.” Romans 8:26, 27 “Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit,
because He maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.” Hebrews 2:16 - 18 “For verily He took not on Him the nature of angels; but He took on Him the seed of Abraham. Wherefore in all things it behooved Him to be made like unto His brethren, that He might be a high priest in the things that pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people. For in that He Himself hath suffered, being tempted, He is able to help them that are tempted.” Hebrews 10:19 - 22 “Having therefore, brethren, liberty to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way, which He hath made new for us, through the veil, that is to say, His flesh; and having an high priest over the house of God; let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from and evil conscience and our bodies washed with pure water.” The Lord Jesus Christ the Son of God is at the right hand of God. Colossians 3:1 “If you then be risen with Christ seek those things which are above where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.” Hebrews 10:12 “But this man, (Jesus Christ) after He had offered one sacrifice for sins forever, sat down at the right hand of God.” 1 Peter 3:22 “Who (Jesus Christ) is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God, angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto Him.” John 14:6 “I am the way, the truth, the life, no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” Hebrews 9:25 “For Christ in not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us.” Hebrews 4:14 - 16 “Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with our infirmities; but in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy and find grace to help in time of need.”

What a precious promise that we know by faith that Christ wants us to come to the throne of grace to ask Him to help us in our lives, to obtain mercy and grace. Praise Him! Oh how foolish it is to think there is another so called mediator, advocate, and intercessor when God’s Word proves the truth of who Christ is.

CHAPTER 3

THE BODILY RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST

The bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ is the foundation of the Christian faith. It is the anchor of my faith. Without the bodily resurrection of Christ I’m still in my sins, no promise of eternal life and much to fear. Here is a song that reminds me how meaning full the bodily resurrection of Christ really is. It is “Because He Lives” by Bill and Gloria Gaither. “God sent His Son, they called Him Jesus; He came to love, heal, and forgive; He lived and died to buy my pardon, and empty grave is there to prove my Savior lives. Because He lives I can face tomorrow; Because He lives all fear is gone; Because I know He holds the future, And life is
worth the living just because He lives.” Listen to what theologian Gary O’Collins says about the bodily resurrection of Christ. “In a profound sense, Christianity without the resurrection is not simply Christianity without its final chapter. It is not Christianity at all.”\(^6\) The resurrection is the supreme vindication for what Christ claimed. These claims are the prophecy of His resurrection, His Deity, His victory over sin and death and His inspired teachings. The resurrection is historically proven by the documentation of historical writings of early historians, and of course, the Scriptures alone proved the resurrection. It is amazing that some think that Jesus never really died but it was a resuscitation not a resurrection or some say it is the swoon theory in which Jesus was unconscious and was ministered back to health. Well Dr. Alexander Metherell destroys all these theories because he explains with scientific precision. Dr. Metherell is an editor of five scientific books. Dr. Metherell has the medical and scientific credentials to explain the Crucifixion. He explains that no one could have survived what Christ went through. Listen to what Dr. Metherell had to say about this crucifixion. “Absolutely not, (when asked if there was any possibility of being swooned) remember that he (Christ) was already in hypovolemic shock from the massive blood loss even before the crucifixion started. He couldn’t possibly have faked his death, because you can’t fake the inability to breathe for long. Besides the spear thrust into his heart would have settled the issue once and for all. And the Romans weren’t about to risk their own death by allowing him to walk away alive.” Then he adds this about the swooned theory again. “I tell them it’s impossible. It’s fanciful theory without any possible basis in fact.”\(^7\) 1 Corinthians 15 is a very important historical document about the resurrection which Paul wrote around A. D. 55 and 57. But even before Paul wrote 1 Corinthians 15 Peter preached about Jesus’ resurrection to the men of Israel because the Pharisees and many other Jews did not believe in His bodily resurrection. There are some religious denominations that do not believe in the bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ and need to lend an ear to this message that Peter preached on the day of Pentecost. Acts 2:22 - 36 “You men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by Him in the midst of you, as you yourselves also know. Him being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain, whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death. Because it was not possible that He should be holden of it. For David speaketh concerning Him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for He is on my right hand, that I should not be moved. Therefore did my heart rejoice and my tongue was glad moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope. Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou hast made known to me the ways of life: thou shalt make me full joy with thy countenance. Men and brethren let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulcher is with us this day. Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, He would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; he seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that His soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.” Christ's bodily resurrection proved the fulfillment of the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah. And it proved He had been exalted to the right hand of God. This proves that He is both Christ and Lord.

At the beginning of Jesus ministry He prophesied of His bodily resurrection. John 2:18 - 22 “Then answered the Jews and said unto him, what sign showest thou unto us, seeing that thou doest these things? Jesus answered and said unto them, destroy this temple, and in three days I
will raise it up. Then said the Jews, forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days? But He spake of the temple of His body. When therefore He was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that He had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said.” Matthew 16:25 “From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders, and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.”

Matthew 17:22 “And while they abode in Galilee, Jesus said unto them, the Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men: and they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again.” By Christ's bodily resurrection it proved He was the Son of God. Romans 1:2 - 4 “Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures, concerning His Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh; and declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead.” Christ's bodily resurrection proves that we can be charged with righteousness, receive forgiveness of sins, attain justification, and have peace with God by faith. Romans 4:21 - 25 “And being fully persuaded that, what He had promised, He was able to perform. And therefore it was imputed to Him for righteousness. Now it was not written for His sake alone that it was imputed to Him; but for us also to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on Him that raised Jesus our Lord from the dead; who was delivered for our offenses, and was raised again for our justification.” It is essential that a person believes that Christ rose bodily from the grave to be saved. It is one of the Doctrines of the faith that is the foundation of a born-again believer.

Let us now look at a very important historical document of genuine authenticity and full of integrity. Always remember that the Holy Spirit inspired Paul to write all his Epistles. The fact of the resurrection can be seen first in 1 Corinthians 15:1 - 8 “Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; By which also ye aresaved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain. For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures: And that he was buried, and he rose again the third day according to the scriptures: And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve: After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once. After that, he was seen of James then of all the apostles. And at last of all he was seen of me.” Now we can look at the importance of the bodily resurrection of Christ. 1 Corinthians 15:13, 14, 17 - 22 “But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen. And if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also in vain. And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; you are yet in your sins. Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable. But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the first fruits of them that slept. For since by man (Adam) came death, by man (Jesus Christ) came also the resurrection of the dead. For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.” Oh what a blessed assurance because of Christ’s bodily resurrection. I have the hope of living with Him for eternity. I Praise the Lord Jesus Christ that we are saved through Him.

There are a number of appearances of Christ after His resurrection and I will try to present to you all the occurrences when and where He appeared.

**Christ appeared to the following:** To Mary Magdalene: John 20:10 – 18 “Then the disciples went away again unto their own home. But Mary stood without at the sepulchre weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, and looked into the sepulchre, And seeth two
angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? She saith unto them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him. And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Jesus standing, and knew not that it was Jesus. Jesus saith unto her, Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou? She, supposing him to be the gardener, saith unto him, Sir, if thou have borne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him, and I will take him away. Jesus saith unto her, Mary. She turned herself, and saith unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master. Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God. Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that he had spoken these things unto her.” To the ten apostles and others, with Thomas absent: John 20:19 – 23 “Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Jesus and stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you. And when he had so said, he shewed unto them his hands and his side. Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord. Then said Jesus to them again, Peace be unto you: as my Father hath sent me, even so send I you. And when he had said this, he breathed on them, and saith unto them, Receive ye the Holy Ghost: Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained.” To Thomas and the other apostles: John 20:26 – 30 “And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: then came Jesus, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, Peace be unto you. Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing. And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God. Jesus saith unto him, Thomas, because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed. And many other signs truly did Jesus in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book:” To the seven apostles: John 21:1 – 14 “After these things Jesus shewed himself again to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias; and on this wise shewed he himself. There were together Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, and the sons of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples. Simon Peter saith unto them, I go a fishing. They say unto him, We also go with thee. They went forth, and entered into a ship immediately; and that night they caught nothing. But when the morning was now come, Jesus stood on the shore: and the disciples knew not that it was Jesus. Then Jesus saith unto them, Children, have ye an any meat? They answered him, No. And he said unto them, Cast the net on the right side of the ship, and ye shall find. Simon Peter went up, and drew the net to land full of great fishes, and hundred and fifty and three: and for all there were so many, yet was not the net broken. Jesus saith unto them, Come and dine. And none of the disciples durst ask him, Who art thou? knowing that it was the Lord. Jesus then cometh, and taketh bread, and giveth them, and fish likewise. This is now the third time that Jesus shewed himself to his disciples, after that he was risen from the dead.” To Cleopas and another disciple on the road to Emmaus: Luke 24: 13 - 32 “And, behold, two of them went that same day to a village called Emmaus, which was from
Jerusalem about threescore furlongs. And they talked together of all these things which had happened. And it came to pass, that, while they communed together and reasoned, Jesus himself drew near, and went with them. But their eyes were holden that they should not know him. And he said unto them, What manner of communications are these that ye have one to another, as ye walk, and are sad? And the one of them, whose name was Cleopas, answering said unto him, Art thou only a stranger in Jerusalem, and hast not known the things which are come to pass therein these days? And he said unto them, What things? And they said unto him, Concerning Jesus of Nazareth, which was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people: And how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him to be condemned to death, and have crucified him. But we trusted that it had been he which should have redeemed Israel: and beside all this, to day is the third day since these things were done. Yea, and certain women also of our company made us astonished, which were early at the sepulchre; And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive. And certain of them which were with us went to the sepulchre, and found it even so as the women had said: but him they saw not. Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory? And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself. And they drew nigh unto the village, whither they went: and he made as though he would have gone further. But they constrained him, saying, Abide with us: for it is toward evening, and the day is far spent. And he went in to tarry with them. And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed it, and brake, and gave to them. And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight. And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures? To the eleven disciples and others: Luke 24:33 – 49 “And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them, Saying, The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon. And they told what things were done in the way, and how he was known of them in breaking of bread. And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you. But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have. And when he had thus spoken, he shewed them his hands and his feet. And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, Have ye here any meat? And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of an honeycomb. And he took it, and did eat before them. And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me. Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures, And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day: And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. And ye are witnesses of these things. And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.”

He was with the apostles at the Mount Olives before His ascension: See also Acts 1:4 – 9 to compare with Luke 24:50 – 52 “And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven. And they worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with great joy:” He appeared to the other women: Matthew 28:8 – 10 “And they departed quickly from
the sepulchre with fear and great joy; and did run to bring his disciples word. And as they went to tell his disciples, behold, Jesus met them, saying, All hail. And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him. Then said Jesus unto them, Be not afraid; go tell my brethren that they go into Galilee, and there shall they see me.” **To the disciples:** Matthew 28:16 – 20 “Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Jesus had appointed them. And when they saw him, they worshipped him: but some doubted. And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.”

I would like to refer back to the book “The Case for Christ” by Lee Strobel because of the wealth of evidence that is given by some of the top theologians that BELIEVE that the Bible is the Word of God. In the chapter “Conclusion:” “The Verdict of History,” Listen to what Lee Strobel said on regarding William Lane Craig’s comments. “’The enduring symbol of Easter – the vacant tomb of Jesus – was a historical reality. The empty grave is reported or implied in extremely early sources - Mark’s gospel and the 1 Corinthians 15 creed - which date so close to the event that they could not possibly have been products of legend. The fact that the gospels report that women discovered the empty tomb bolsters the story’s authenticity. The site of Jesus’ tomb was known to both Christian and Jew alike, so it could have been checked by skeptics. In fact, nobody, not even the Roman authorities or Jewish leaders, ever claimed that the tomb still contained Jesus’ body. Instead they were forced to invent the absurd story that the disciples, despite having no motive or opportunity, had stolen the body – a theory that not even the most skeptical critic believes today.’”(8) British theologian Michael Green said “The appearances of Jesus are as well authenticated as anything in antiquity… There can be no rational doubt that they occurred.”(9) In an interview with Dr. Edwin M. Yamauchi his wealth of evidence came from ancient history. He is one of the countries leading experts in ancient history. Listen to what Dr. Yamauchi says about the resurrection of Jesus Christ. His comment will be on the seven letters written by Ignatius around A.D. 117. This historical evidence is a very important, apart from the New Testament. “What is significant about Ignatius is that he emphasized both the deity of Jesus and the humanity of Jesus, as against the docetic heresy, which denied that Jesus was really human. He also stressed the historical underpinnings of Christianity; he (Ignatius) wrote in one letter, on his way to being executed, that Jesus was truly persecuted under Pilate, was truly crucified, was truly raised from the dead, and that those who believe in Him would be raised, too.”(10) Dr. Yamauchi gave another example of historical writings of an individual named Tacitus and said this of Tacitus “Tacitus recorded what is probably the most important reference to Jesus outside the New Testament.” In A.D. 115 he explicitly states that Nero persecuted the Christians as scapegoats to divert suspicion away from himself for the great fire that had devastated Rome in A.D.64.” Here is a quote from Tacitus. “Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called Christians by the populace. Christus, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the extreme penalty during the reign of Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, Pontius Pilatus, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out not only in Judaea, the first source of evil, but even in Rome… Accordingly, an arrest was first made of all who pleaded guilty: then, upon their information, an immense multitude was convicted, not so much of the crime of firing the city, as of hatred against mankind. (11) Two things of importance are mentioned here; the crucifixion of Christ and the resurrection of Christ. Why the
resurrection? While it was not mentioned by word it had its truth in the fact that this group of people called Christians would be so willingly to die for what they believed in. Now I would like to introduce to you another theologian professor Dr. Gregory A. Boyd who had to say this in “The Case for Christ.” “The theological truth is based on historical truth. That’s the way the New Testament talks. Look at the sermon of Peter in the second Chapter of Acts. He stands up and says,” “You guys are a witness of these things; they weren’t done in secret. David’s tomb is still with us, but God has raised Jesus from the dead. Therefore we proclaim Him to be the Son of God.” “Take away the miracles and you take away the Resurrection, and then you’ve got nothing to proclaim. Paul said that if Jesus wasn’t raised from the dead, our faith is futile; it’s useless, it is empty. I don’t want to base my life on a symbol. I want reality, and the Christian faith has always been rooted in reality. What’s not rooted in reality is the faith of LIBERAL SCHOLARS. They’re the ones who are following a pipe dream, but Christianity is not a pipe dream.”

I would like to bring out one more point about Lee Strobel’s book and what he said on pg. 264 and pg. 265 and close with that, and hope that you have been awakened by the revealed truth of Christ’s bodily resurrection. Lee Strobel wrote; “What clinched it for me was the famous study by A. N. Sherwin - White, the great classical historian from Oxford University, which William Lane Craig alluded to in our interview. Sherwin-White meticulously examined the rate at which legend occurred in the ancient world. His conclusion: not even two full generations was enough time for legend to develop and to wipe out solid core of historical truth.” “In light of the convincing facts I had learned during my investigation, in the face of this overwhelming avalanche of evidence in the case for Christ, the great irony was this: it would require much more faith for me to maintain my atheism than to trust in Jesus of Nazareth!”

CHAPTER 4

THE TRINITY

Please remember when reading the subject of the Trinity that it will not be an exhaustive study on the subject because books upon books have been written on this subject. This chapter is
just to bring out some important details on the issue of the Trinity to help build a foundation for you on this truth.

The Trinity is based on biblical revelation, and faith, not human logic. Why? Our human logic cannot conceive, comprehend, or understand the things of God. His ways are not our ways; His ways are above our ways. Jesus said this in Matthew 11:27 “All things are delivered unto me of the Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save he to whomsoever the Son reveal him.” Faith is the vector for believing God at His Word and not our own reasoning. Let God be true and every man a liar. The word “trinity” is a term that is not found in the Bible but a word used to describe what is apparent about God in the Scriptures. The Bible clearly speaks of God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit…and also clearly presents that there is only one God. Thus the term: “tri” meaning three, and “unity” meaning one, Tri + Unity = Trinity. It is a way of acknowledging what the Bible reveals to us about God, that God is yet three “Persons” who have the same essence of deity.

In explaining the Trinity I will use first an analogy to give a type of picture what the Trinity could be, but I must be careful not to be dogmatic about the analogy. It is to give you an idea of the teaching. Later in this chapter I will present Scripture to offer the truth about this doctrine. Let us look at the three elements of the earth. Time, Space, and Matter; with time there is past, present, and future; past is distinct from present, which is distinct from future. Each is simultaneous. Past, present, and future is simply the representation of three distinct aspects of time. Space has height, width and depth. Height is distinct from width, which is distinct from depth and these three are simply the representation of the three distinct aspects of space. Matter has liquid, gas and solid. Liquid is distinct from gas, which is distinct from solid and these three are simply the representation of three distinct aspects of matter. Let us now look at water, ice and steam. Water is distinct from ice, which is distinct from steam and these three are simply the representation of three distinct aspects of water. This analogy helped me with understanding the Godhead but, remember the Trinity is based on biblical revelation, and faith, not human logic. I believe there is only one true living God. While there is indivisible unity in the Godhead, He exists in three separate persons – God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit – equal in every divine attribute and executing distinct, but harmonious offices in the work of creation and redemption.

Genesis 1:26 “And God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness.” Genesis 3:22 “And the Lord God said, behold, the man is become as one of us.” The words our, and, us are personal pronouns and are plural meaning more than one. In Genesis 1:26, and Genesis 3:22 the verses reveal God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Genesis 1:1, 2 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.”

And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the spirit of God (God the Holy Spirit) moved upon the face of the waters. ” John 1:1 – 3, 14, “In the beginning was the Word, (Jesus Christ) and the Word was with God, and the Word (Jesus Christ) was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made. And the Word (Jesus Christ) was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.” All three of the Godhead acted in creation. 1 John 5:7 “For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, (Jesus Christ) and the Holy Ghost, and these three are ONE.” John 3:16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only
begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.
Romans 5:8 “But God commendeth his love towards us, that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. Romans 8:11 “But if the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.” All three of the Godhead acted in a distinct part of redemption.

1. God the Father: There are many that do not believe in God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. True Born Again believers believe in this doctrine and call it the Trinity, three persons in One God. Those who do not believe in this doctrine of three persons in One God, but believe in God would have to agree that He is an infinite, eternal, wise, all – powerful, all – present, all – knowing, holy, just, good, loving, and a Spirit, the Maker and Supreme Ruler of heaven and earth. Jesus Christ has all of these attributes, as does the Holy Spirit. Let me give you a few verses from the Bible that gives thought on this issue. There will be more as we proceed further. Deuteronomy 6:4 “Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God is one LORD:” Isaiah 45:5 “I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me: 1Corinthians 8:4 “As concerning therefore the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice unto idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is none other God but one.” Matthew 3:16, 17 “And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.” Matthew 28:19 “Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: John 10:30 “I and my Father are one.” John 14:9 “Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father?” John 12:44, 45 “Jesus cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me. And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me. Romans 8:9 “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.” Matthew 1:20 “But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.” Luke 1:35 “And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.” John 14:16 – 17, 23 “And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.”

2. Scripture proves that Jesus Christ is God: 1 John 5:20 “And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life.”

The words “Lord Jesus” is seen one hundred seventeen times and the words “Lord Jesus Christ” is seen eighty seven times in the New Testament. The Jews would call that blasphemy to call someone else Lord except for God. The Apostles called Him Lord, and all the Scriptures say He is Lord God.

Let’s consider Jesus Christ being God the Son. The Only Begotten when used of the Son is in the sense of unoriginated relationship; the begetting is not an event of time, however it is
remote, but a fact irrespective of time. Jesus Christ did not become the Son of God but necessarily and eternally IS the Son of God. John 17:5 “And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.” John 8:56 - 59 “Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad. Then said the Jews unto Jesus, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM.” Isaiah 43:11 “I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no Savior.” Isaiah 9:6 “For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counselor, The mighty God, the everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.” Luke 2:11 “For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Savior, which is Christ the Lord.” John 1:1 - 3 “In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him; and without Him was not anything made that was made.” John 1:14 “And the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us, (and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.” Colossians 1:15a “Who (Jesus Christ) is the image of the invisible God.” a. Jesus Christ has all the attributes of God: Jesus Christ is the Creator. Colossians 1:16 “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers, all things were created by Him, and for him.” Genesis 1:1 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.” In chapter 22 “Creation” it will be discussed again about Jesus Christ being the creator. He is Omnipresent (everywhere). Matthew 18:20 “For where two or three are gathered in my name, there am I in the midst of them.” Matthew 28:20 “Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world.” Christ is Omniscient (all knowing). He knew all things. Matthew 12:25 “And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them.” Jesus even prophesied future events. Matthew 16:25 “From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders, and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.” Matthew 17:22 “And while they abode in Galilee, Jesus said unto them, the Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men: and they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again.” Jesus is Omnipotent (all-powerful). Revelation 1:17, 18 “And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me. Fear not, I am the first and the last: I am he that liveth, and was dead, and, behold, I am alive forever more. Amen, and have the keys of hell and death.” Revelation 19:6 “And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.” Philippians 3:20, 21 “For our conversation is in heaven: from whence also we look for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ. Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according for the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.” Jesus Christ is Righteous. 1 John 2:1 “My little children, these things write I unto you, that you sin not. And if any man sin we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.” 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he (God) hath made him (Jesus Christ) to be sin for us, who knew no sin.” All mankind is unrighteous. Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” He is Sovereign (one who holds all power and authority). Acts 10:36 “The word, which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: he is Lord of all.” Christ is Eternal. John 1:1 “In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God.” Jesus Christ is Judge. 2 Timothy 4:1 “I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his
Christ the Lord Saves. Is Jesus Christ the Savior? The answer is yes and He is the Savior, and He is God. Isaiah 43:11 “I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no Savior.” Titus 3:4, 6 “But after that the kindness and love of God our Savior toward man appeared.” Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior.” 1 Timothy 1:15 “This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.” Philippians 2:10 - 11 “That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.”

b. Paul in his Epistles, referred to Jesus as Lord: 1 Corinthians 12:3 “Wherefore I give you to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of God calleth Jesus accursed: and that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost.” Romans 10: 9 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God has raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” Hebrews 1:8 - 9 “But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is forever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity, therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.” c. Peter referred to Jesus as Lord: 2 Peter 3:18 “But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To Him be glory both now and forever Amen.” d. Thomas and the disciples proclaimed Jesus as Lord: John 20:28 “And Thomas answered and said unto Him, My Lord and my God.” John 20:25 “The other disciples therefore said unto him, We have seen the Lord.” e. Jesus Christ was with the Father in the beginning because Jesus Christ is the Only Begotten Son of God: John 17:5 “And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.” Luke 2:11 “An angel appeared to the shepherds in the field and said unto them.” For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Savior, which is Christ the Lord.” John 8:56 - 59 “Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad. Then said the Jews unto Jesus, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM. Then took they up stones to cast at him.” The Word of God has given truthful facts that Jesus Christ is God. We cannot deny what the Scriptures have presented. Make a study for yourself on this matter and you will see verse upon verse proving that Jesus is Lord God.

3. Scripture proves that the Holy Spirit is God: The Holy Ghost is found in the Bible seven times, Holy Spirit ninety one times, Spirit of God twenty six times, and Spirit of Christ two times. That gives us one hundred twenty six times that God mentions His Spirit.

Genesis 1:2 “And the **spirit of God** moved upon the face of the waters.” Genesis 1:26 “And God said, let **us** make man in **our** image, after **our** likeness.” Genesis 3:22 “And the Lord God said, behold, the man is become as one of **us**.” The words **our**, and, **us** are personal pronouns and mean more than one.

I believe that the Holy Spirit is a divine Person possessing all the attributes of deity and is equal with God the Father and God the Son. I believe that He was active in creation and is the restrainer of the evil One. He convicts of sin, of judgment, and of righteousness. He bears witness to the truth of the Gospel in preaching and testimony. He is the agent in the new birth; that He seals, endues, guides, teaches, witnesses, sanctifies, helps, and distributes spiritual gifts to all believers; that the Apostolic gifts, such as tongues and healing, were unique to the first century and ceased as the New Testament Scriptures were completed. The Holy Spirit the Creator. Job 33:4 “The Spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life.” Genesis 1:2 “And the **spirit of God** moved upon the face of the waters.” Job 26:13a
“By his spirit he hath garnished the heavens.”  

2Timothy 3:16 - 17 “All scripture is given by the inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.”  

2Peter 1:19 - 21 “We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in you hears: Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.”  

The Holy Spirit is Omniscient (all knowing).  

1Corinthians 2:10 “But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit; for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.”  

The Holy Spirit is Omnipotent (all-powerful).  

Luke 1:35 - 37 “And the angel answered and said unto her, the Holy Ghost shall come unto thee, and the power of the Highest shall over-shadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God. And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she hath also conceived a son in her old age: and this it the sixth month with her, who was called barren. For with God nothing shall be impossible.”  

The Holy Spirit is Omnresent (everywhere).  

Psalms 139:7 “Whither shall I go from thy spirit? Or whither shall I flee from thy presence?”  

The Holy Spirit is Omniscient (all knowing).  

1John 14:17 “Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”  

John 4:13 “Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit.”  

1 Corinthians 3:16 “Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?”  

2 Corinthians 3:17 “Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.”  

1 John 4:26 “But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsover I have said unto you.”  

Acts 1:8 “But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.”  

2 Corinthians 3:17 “Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty.”  

Acts 5:3, 4 “But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back part of the price of the land? Whiles it remained, was it not thine own? And after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? Why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? Thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God.”  

Titus 3:4 - 6 “But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost; Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour.”  

The Holy Spirit Seals the Believer.  

Ephesians 1:13 “In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise.”  

Ephesians 4:30 “And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.”  

The Word of God reveals that Holy Spirit is a divine Person. It is important that you search the Scriptures for more truth of the subject of the Trinity and be rooted and grounded in this Doctrine.
CHAPTER 5

SALVATION by GRACE through FAITH ALONE
I believe before the foundation of the world God in His infinite love and mercy planned for mankind to be saved by His Grace through Faith alone. *Ephesians 1:4 - 5* “According as He hath chosen us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before Him in love: Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to Himself, according to the good pleasure of His will.”

The Scriptures teach assertively that salvation is by Christ’s shed blood, death on the cross for our sins and bodily resurrection from the dead and it is by grace through faith alone, and accomplished only through the mediating work of the Son of God. It is wholly apart from works and is upon the sole condition of faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and never without genuine repentance. In order to be saved the sinner must be born again, personally receiving Christ as Lord and Savior. I would like to add that in the Gospel of John the theme “Saved by Believing” is seen ninety nine times, almost one hundred times in the Word of God.

In the following Chapters I will explain the doctrines of repentance, justification, regeneration, adoption and glorification and why they are all part of salvation when one receives the Lord Jesus Christ as their own personnel Savior. Make sure you study these doctrines after this chapter to have a more complete understanding of salvation.

Man is always trying to change what God says. The Bible say’s “Let God be true and every man a liar.” *Romans 1:25* “Who changed the truth of God into a lie.” A whole lot of people are heading to a real place called hell because they have believed in a lie. What is that lie? Many claim that all religions will ultimately be acceptable to God because they represent mankind's corporate attempt to find religious truth. They say that even if Christianity is God’s only true revelation, He will still accept other religions because they represent sincere attempts to find Him and that if they are sincere enough about religion or being religious enough that God will accept them. Oh my goodness!!!! If there is anything that you get out this book may it be that you believe what God says about salvation and not what man claims to be true about salvation.

Please read all these Bible verses. I purposely put them in here so you don't have to look them up so you can read them right here in this book. I encourage you though to look up all these verses yourself and study them.

You must first understand; who you are, where you came from and where you are headed to know why a person needs to saved.

THE HUMAN RACE

*Colossians 1:16* “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers, all things were created by Him, and for him.” *Genesis 1:1* “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.” *Genesis 1:26 - 28* “And God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that crept upon the earth. So God created man in His own image, in the image of God created he him:

*male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.” *Genesis 2:7* “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the
breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Adam was the first human being.

When God created man He created them with three parts, body, soul, and spirit, 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” A. The body is the outer part of man, which can be seen. All the body parts are which, we function with like the eyes, feet, nose, hands, and etc. B. The soul is the part of man, which cannot be seen. Genesis 2:7 “And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” The soul has three parts the mind, emotions and the will. The mind expresses the thoughts of what we think. Adam had to express his thoughts when he named the living creatures that God created. He had to think what to name them. Genesis 2:19 “And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof.” The emotions express love or hate. The will is the free choice to do right or wrong, to obey or disobey. C. The spirit is that part of man which can know God and receive His life and a place where God could come and dwell. Man can only glorify God by having His Spirit dwelling in him and to have a personnel relationship and communication with him. The soul of man is the overpowering source in man. If man does not have the Spirit of Christ he can be led, taught, and guided by the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life of service for God. But again man must have the will to receive Him and to live for Him.

Now looking at the verse in Genesis 1:31 “And God saw every thing that he had made, and behold, it was very good.” Everything that God made was perfect. God intended the lion to lay down with the lamb. He intended for the human race to live forever. He intended that there be no sin, death, disease, sickness, sorrows, weather disasters, or any number of other disasters that you might think of. The fall of man brought in all the pains of the human race. God created the first man, because He wanted a race of people who would obey, love, worship and glorify Him. God wanted to have fellowship with the human race. Adam is the father of the whole human race. But Adam rebelled. Adam and Eve sinned in the Garden of Eden. They disobeyed God. That was their sin. Disobedience is sin. Adam produced a race of sinners. The whole creation was ruined. Remember Genesis 1:31 “It was very good?” Now it was ruined.

Adam died on the day he disobeyed God. I would like to teach here where we must all understand what happened in the Garden that day. Adam died! Did Adam and Eve fall over dead when they ate of the fruit? NO, then what happened? What does the Bible mean when it said when they ate of the fruit that they would surely die. Genesis 2:17 “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” What is death? The word death in the Greek is thanatos it has two meanings. A. It is physical death, the spirit of man separated from the body. B. It is spiritual death, the spirit of man separated from God. Death is the opposite of life. It never denotes non-existence. Spiritual life is conscious existence in communion with God. Spiritual death is a tormented conscious existence in separation from God. Both of these are the punishment, penalty of sin. Instead of Adam having God’s life within him, the whole human race became separated from God because of sin. This was a spiritual death and physical death. Instead of having Gods

nature, the whole human race became sinful and self-centered. Sin has separated Adam and the whole human race from God. God is HOLY, HOLY He cannot have fellowship with sin; He cannot be in the presence of sin. Fellowship with God was cut off. The human race is spiritually
dead, and also will die physically. The human race stands guilty before God because they have disobeyed His Law. Romans 5:12 “Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.” Romans 5:15b “For if the offence of one (Adam) many be dead.” Romans 5:17 “For if by one (Adam) mans offence death reigned by one (Adam).” Romans 5:18 “Therefore as by the offence of one (Adam) judgment came upon all men to condemnation.” Romans 3:10 - 12 “As it is written, there is none righteous, no, not one.” There is none that understandeth; there is none that seeketh after God. They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.” Romans 3:19 “Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.” Galatians 3:10 “For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” Jeremiah 17:9 “The heart is deceitful above all things, desperately wicked, who can know it.” Psalms 51:5 “Behold, I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.” Romans 3:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” Revelation 21:8 “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murders, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake, which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.” The whole human race is condemned. The human race is guilty before God. The penalty for sin is death, hell. The human race deserves it.

So now we know who the human race is and what is wrong with it and where it is headed. But God is not done with the human race! He still wants a race of people that will obey, love, worship and glorify Him and to have fellowship with Him and live with Him forever. He wanted the human race to have a way back to Him and not to be separated from Him. God cannot be in the presence of sin this is why we are separated from Him, and the penalty of sin is death. God is Holy, Righteous and Just and sin had to be dealt with. God’s judgment upon sin is death. How would God save man from this penalty of sin? When Adam and Eve sinned God showed Adam and Eve what the penalty of sin was. Genesis 3:21 “Unto Adam also and to his wife did the Lord God make coats of skins, and clothed them.” God showed that death of an animal with the shedding of blood was to be a covering for their sin. From that time forth there would be sacrificing of animals, a shedding of blood for a covering for sin. Genesis 4:4 “And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof, and the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering.” Exodus 12:5 - 7, 13 “Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year: you shall take it out from the sheep, or from the goats: and you shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month: and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening. And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts on the upper doorpost of the house, wherein they shall eat it. And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where you are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you when I smite the land of Egypt.” Exodus 12:21 - 23, 26, 27 “Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the Passover. And you shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house till the morning. For the Lord will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the Lord will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you. That you shall say, it is the sacrifice of the
Lord's Passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.”

Hebrews 9:22b “without the shedding of blood there is no remission.” Isaiah 53:7 “He (Jesus Christ) was oppressed and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth: He is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearsers is dumb, so He openeth not his mouth.” This was the prophecy of Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God to take away the sins of the world. John 1:29 “The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sins of the world.” Thirty times Jesus was called the Lamb of God in the New Testament. Romans 5:9 “Much more then being now justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath through Him.” Romans 3:25 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood.” Hebrews 9:28a “So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many.” Colossians 1:14, 19 “In whom (Jesus Christ) we have redemption through His blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” “And, having made peace through His blood of His cross by Him to reconcile all things unto himself; I say, whether they be things in the earth, or things in heaven.”

I would encourage you to read the book of Exodus and Leviticus and see that all the sacrificing of animal took place in the Tabernacle on the brazen altar. The sacrificing of animals and the Tabernacle were pictures and types of Jesus Christ of the one who was to come to be the Lamb of God the Savior of the world.

Now we see Jesus Christ as our substitute for the penalty of sin. Let me show you in the Scriptures. Matthew 27:45, 46 “Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? That is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?” God turned His back on Christ. He could not look upon Him because He became sin for the whole human race. Christ died and shed His blood for our sins. Through His shed blood, death and resurrection Jesus Christ the Lamb of God the Savior redeemed us and brought us back to God. Now we can be saved through Him. John 3:15 - 18 “That whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that He gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. He that believeth on Him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.” John 5:24 "Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on Him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.” John 6:47 “Verily, verily, I say unto you. He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.” Romans 5:8 - 11 “But God commendeth His love towards us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. Much more then being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from the wrath through Him. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of His Son, much more being reconciled we shall be saved by His life. And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.” John 8:24 “I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am He, ye shall die in your sins.” 2 Peter 3: 9 “God is not slack concerning His promise, as some men count slackness; but is long-suffering toward us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” God sent His Son to bring us back to Him. 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For He hath made Him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him.” After a person accepts Christ that person becomes a child of
God, accepted into the family God, receives Christ’s Righteousness and Holiness, receives the
divine nature of God, and the Holy Spirit comes to indwell in the believer, now this person can
have fellowship with God and love, worship, and glorify Him, and to commune with Him and
live forever. It is only through the Lord Jesus Christ that God can accept the human race and
make them His child and bring them into the Kingdom of His dear Son. Galatians 3: 26 “For ye
are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.” John 14:6 “I am (Jesus Christ) the way, the
truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”

ARE YOU BORN AGAIN?

This is the most important question that can be asked. Why? Because Jesus Christ
commanded that one must be born again. John 3:3, 7 “Jesus answered and said unto him,
Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”
Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again.”

Remember that the spirit is that part of man, which can know God and receive His life and a
place where God could come and dwell. Man can only glorify God by having His Spirit
dwelling in him to have a personal relationship and communication with him. The soul of man is
the overpowering source in man. If man does not have the Spirit of Christ he will be self-
centered, and the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life will rule him along with
Satan's kingdom of darkness. This is why the human race needs to be born again. If man has
received His Spirit he can be led, taught, and guided by the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life
of service for God. But again man must have the will to receive Him and to live for Him.

If you are not born again here are the reasons why you don't understand God's Word or
understand the things of God and why you will not enter heaven when you die.

1Corinthians 2: 9 - 14 “But as it is written. Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love Him. But God hath revealed them unto us (born again believers) by His Spirit: for the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. For what man knows the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? Even so the things of God knows no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit, (born again believers) which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak not in the words which man’s wisdom teaches, but which the Holy Spirit teaches, comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man (people that have not been born again) receives not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them because they are spiritually discerned. But he (born again believers) that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man. For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we (born again believers) have the mind of Christ.” 1 John 4: 13 - 15 “Hereby know we (born again believers) that we dwell in Him, and He in us, because He hath given us of His Spirit. And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Savior of the world. Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him and he in God.” 1 John 5:1a “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” Romans 10:9 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” John 8:24 “I said therefore unto you that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I Am He, ye shall die in your sins.” Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.” Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith, and that not of ourselves: it is a gift
of God: Not of works lest any man should boast.” Salvation is a free gift it cannot be earned, or worked for. You cannot be religious, or good enough to receive Salvation. Christ did all the work on the cross. Romans 5:1 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.” There are many more verses that prove that we are justified by faith and not of works and I will address this issue in chapters 8 and 9. Works is what we do for the One who saved us. Works is what we do because we love the One who saved us. Works is what we do to show Christ and others that we have accepted Him as Lord and Savior. James 2:18 “Yea, a man may say, thou hast faith, and I have works: show me thy faith without thy works, and I will show thee my faith by my works.” Genuine faith in Jesus Christ the Lord produces works. Works produced by faith in Jesus Christ justifies our faith.

Have you forsaken all worldly goods, and religious philosophies, worldly and religious traditions, rituals, rules, and regulations, cultural ideals, other religions, and good works for Salvation? Have you admitted that you are a sinner deserving hell, repented for your sins; confessed with your mouth the LORD JESUS, and believed in your heart that the LORD JESUS CHRIST is the Son of God and believed the LORD JESUS CHRIST died for your sins, and believed that the LORD JESUS CHRIST arose bodily from the grave. If you have done that then you are a true believer. The LORD JESUS CHRIST is the only way to heaven. Acts 4:12 “NEITHER IS THERE SALVATION IN ANY OTHER: FOR THERE IS NONE OTHER NAME UNDER HEAVEN GIVEN AMONG MEN, WHEREBY WE MUST BE SAVED.” Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is a gift of God. Not of works, lest any man should boast.” My hope is built on nothing less, but Jesus blood and righteousness, I dare not trust the sweetest frame but wholly lean on Jesus name. I will not trust in anything else but Christ for my salvation.

All the great so called philosophers and theologians, writers of great wisdom of other religions, that give you sincere ways to live to bring you closer to God to be accepted by Him WILL NOT get you into heaven. Jesus Christ is the way, the truth, and life. The Bible gives the true wisdom for life and how to have eternal life. 1 John 5:11 – 13 “And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son, hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of God.”
CHAPTER 6

REPENTANCE

I believe this is the most important bible doctrine. Why? Many have a misunderstanding about repentance and undervalue it. It is the first step in true conversion in receiving the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior. It cannot be emphasized to strongly or to often that repentance is essential for Salvation. What does repent mean? The Greek word *metanoeo* means to “*to change one's mind*” it is found fifty-eight times in the bible. In the context of this word it is what one must change his mind about. The other word is *metamelomai*, which means to regret or feel sorry. This is not the repentance that Christ or the Apostles preached. A person can feel sorry for sin and confess it to men and still not be saved or right with God. We will address this thought later in this chapter.

You cannot embrace Christianity without biblical repentance first. There are some people that insist repentance is a work to be performed, such as punishing the body by fasting and penance or insisting on some additional experience in order to merit favor with God. This is not Bible repentance. I will show you from God’s Word what true repentance is.

**Repentance is Important and there are seven reasons why:** God's Word again is going to be used to prove that repentance is essential. 1. *Matthew 4:17* “From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.” 2. *Mark 1:15* “And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.” 3. *Mark 6:12* “And they went out, and preached that men should repent.” 4. *Luke 13:3 - 5* “I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish. Or those eighteen, upon whom the tower in Siloam fell, and slew them, think ye that they were sinners above all men that dwelt in Jerusalem? I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.” 5. *Luke 24:46 - 47* “And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.” 6. *Acts 17:30* “And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent.” 7. *Acts 20:21* “Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.” 7. 2 Peter 3: 9 “The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is long-suffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” John the Baptist and the Apostles preached repentance. Jesus Christ commanded, and commissioned it.

**What is True Repentance?** There are three important points in biblical repentance. Repentance involves a change of mind, and a change of feeling, and a change of purpose. Let’s take a look at all three of these from God's Word.

**A. A change of mind:** In this section the word *metanoeo* (*a change of mind*) is going to be discussed. Repentance is a call to a changed mind, which leads to changed attitudes and desires and a changed course of action. One good example of a change of mind is in *Matthew 21:28 - 32* “But what think ye? A certain man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, Son, go work to day in my vineyard. He answered and said, I will not: but afterward he repented, and went. And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, I go, sir: and went not. Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, The first. Jesus saith unto them, Verily I say
unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you. For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and ye believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and ye, when ye had seen it, repented not afterward, that ye might believe him.” In Acts chapter 2 Peter preached a message to many people who thought of Jesus Christ as just a man, prophet, or a man who just wanted to be famous or recognized. Let’s read what is revealed about Christ in this passage. Acts 2:14 - 41 “But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words: For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the third hour of the day. But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel; And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams: And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy: And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke: The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come: And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved. Ye men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus of Nazareth, a man approved of God among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which God did by him in the midst of you, as ye yourselves also know: Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain: Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved: Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope: Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou hast made known to me the ways of life; thou shalt make me full of joy with thy countenance. Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses. Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear. For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he saith himself, The LORD said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, Until I make thy foes thy footstool. Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ. Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do? Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call. And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation. Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.”

Peter preached unto them Christ's death, burial, resurrection, and that He is the Son
of God, Lord and Savior. Before I received Christ as my Lord and Savior I thought I was a pretty good person, haven't done any real bad things, never in jail, always got along pretty good with people and I knew about Christ but never repented. But the Bible showed me something.

By the Law is the knowledge of sin. Romans 7:7 “What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.” 1 John 3:4 “Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.” James 2:9, 10, 11 “ye commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors. For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. thou art become a transgressor of the law.” Romans 5:20 “Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound.” Romans 7:13 “that sin by the commandment might become exceeding sinful.” Galatians 3:10 “As it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” Sin is transgression of the Law. We have all broken God’s holy, righteous Law and have sinned against Him. Isaiah 64:6a “But we are all as unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags.” Romans 3:10, 23 “As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one: For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” The word all in that previous verse includes everyone. And there is a penalty of sin. God's judgment upon sin is death. Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” I was forced to change my mind about myself. I saw myself as God sees me, a sinner, condemned, deserving hell. God is a holy, righteous God and cannot accept sin and cannot be in the presence of it, or have fellowship with it. We all need to see that we have sinned against God broken His Law and need to change our mind about ourselves and about sin. Sin has many aspects or faces. Sin is transgression, error, trespass, lawlessness, of the Law of God and unbelief. We need to recognize our fallen nature, which separates us from God. This is the necessary preparation for true repentance. God is not a God of hate He loves us. John 3:16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.” Romans 5:8 “But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.” 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.”

We need to change our minds about ourselves that we are sinners, deserving hell, about God's justice, and righteousness, and about who Jesus Christ is.

B. A change of feeling: Now we will look at the word metamelomai (regret or sorry for). Being obtuse toward sin is not the way to approach the cross. Sin caused death! Jesus Christ died in our place! See what sin caused! We need to see the exceedingly sinfulness of our disobedience. We need to see God’s Holiness, and Righteousness, we need to look at Christ on the cross and realize that He was innocent, righteous, without sin when we are the ones that deserved what He went through. Being obtuse to sin does not lead to true repentance. 2 Corinthians 7:9, 10 “Now I rejoice, not that ye were made sorry, but that ye sorrowed to repentance: for ye were made sorry after a godly manner, that ye might receive damage by us in nothing. For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.” Luke 18:9 - 14 “And he spake this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others: Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners,
unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess. And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner. I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.” Let me ask you a question. Is this how you feel? Notice the Pharisee in what he is saying. It is just like many today. I'm not that bad. I'm not like those who are in jail. I do a lot of good things for others. This is not what God is looking for. He wants all of us to come to Him as a sinner no matter how good or bad you are. We all have sinned. People say they are sorry when they get caught doing something wrong. What they are saying is that they are sorry that they got caught. This is the word metamelomai (sorry for, regret). Mankind does not want to admit, they did wrong. We are always in denial. I was in denial, always trying to justify of what I did or did not do. All of us are like this. Read what David wrote in Psalms 51:3, 4 “For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin is ever before me. Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judgest.” Godly sorrow causes us to turn from sin unto God. True repentance will make us hate sin and forsake it and turn to live for God depending upon His power for our lives.

C. A Change of purpose: There are three aspects of this purpose, a. Confession of sin to God. b. Forsaking of sin. c. Turning unto God. All three are required in true repentance. Let's take a look at each of these. a. Confessing our sin to God. The whole human race wants to hide sin from God; at least that is what we would like to think we do. We cannot hide sin from God. He knows our heart and our thoughts and what we do in secret. We can hide sin from man sometimes but sometimes it eventually is found out. Just think about this for a minute about hiding sin. We know that there is sin that we have thought we have hid from God. We might have hid it from man, but not God. Proverbs 15:3 “The eyes of the LORD are in every place, beholding the evil and the good.” From the very beginning man has tried to hide sin from God. Genesis 3:8 “And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.” Adam and Eve disobeyed God and sinned and tried to hide from God. Luke 12:2, 3 “For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known. Therefore whatsoever ye have spoken in darkness shall be heard in the light; and that which ye have spoken in the ear in closets shall be proclaimed upon the housetops.” Nothing can be hid from God; we must admit and acknowledge our sin. Psalm 38:17, 18 “For I am ready to halt, and my sorrow is continually before me. For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin.” Luke 18:13 “And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner.” Luke 15:21 “And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son.”

Recognizing sin and then confessing our sin is what God wants. We must also confess sin if we have wronged another person. Matthew 5:23, 24 “Therefore if thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath ought against thee; Leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift.” James 5:16 “Confess your faults one to another, and pray for one another.” b. Forsaking sin: This means to turn away from it never to return to review the remains. Once we have confessed our sins don't go back to the sin and continue to do it. Confess it and forsake it. Isaiah 55:7 “Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.” Proverbs 28:13 “He that covereth his sins shall not prosper: but whoso confesseth and
forsaketh them shall have mercy.” 1 John 1:7 “But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.”

c. Turning unto God is true repentance: After we have confessed our sins and forsake them we need to turn unto God and live for Him through His power and have the victory over sin. You can have victory over sin. 1 Thessalonians 1:9 “For they themselves shew of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how ye turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God.” Acts 11:21 “And the hand of the Lord was with them: and a great number believed, and turned unto the Lord.” Acts 26:18 “To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.” There is a difference in someone's life when true repentance has taken place. As time goes on he turns to God for His power to live for Him. Turning from sin does not profit anything unless we turn to God.

Repentance can be produced in a person's life: First of all repentance is a gift of God. We cannot earn repentance. Acts 11:18 “When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.” 2 Timothy 2:25 “In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth.” Acts 5:30, 31 “The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree. Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.” Repentance cannot be worked for. We need to see how wonderful God is and loving to give us such a gift that we may be saved through His Son. We must have true repentance before we accept His Son. Out of God's mercy He has given us a way not to be separated from Him. God wanted us to see our helplessness without Him so we would change our minds about ourselves and turn to Him. Certain human means can produce repentance: Acts 2:37, 38, 41 “Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do? Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.”

Repentance is commanded by the Gospel: It gives us the ability to do what is commanded. We must make the decision to repent because we have the ability to do so just like the people of Nineveh did. Jonah 3:5 - 10 “So the people of Nineveh believed God, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them. For word came unto the king of Nineveh, and he arose from his throne, and he laid his robe from him, and covered him with sackcloth, and sat in ashes. And he caused it to be proclaimed and published through Nineveh by the decree of the king and his nobles, saying, Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste any thing: let them not feed, nor drink water: But let man and beast be covered with sackcloth, and cry mightily unto God: yea, let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the violence that is in their hands. Who can tell if God will turn and repent, and turn away from his fierce anger, that we perish not? And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil, that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did it not.” It is not just any message that produces repentance but the Gospel of Jesus Christ that God uses as the instrument to bring about repentance. 1 Thessalonians 1:5 - 10 “For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost: So that ye were ensamples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia. For from you
sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith to God-ward is spread abroad; so that we need not to speak any thing. For they themselves shew of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how ye turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God; And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.” Romans 2:4 “Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?” 2 Peter 3:9 “The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” Revelation 3:19 “As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent.”

**There are results in Repentance:** Repentance causes rejoicing in heaven. Luke 15:7, 10 “I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance. Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth.”

Repentance brings pardon and forgiveness of sin. Isaiah 55:7 “Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.” Acts 3:19 “Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.” Repentance is a condition of forgiveness and qualifies us for pardon. The Holy Spirit is poured out upon those who repent. Acts 2:38 “Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.” Romans 8:9 “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

Come now! And reason with the Scriptures and Repent!
CHAPTER 7

FAITH

Faith is complete convincing confidence that a person or thing will function according to promise. Faith is the substance hoped for the evidence of things not seen. Faith is claiming God's promises for needs and problems. Faith in the Lord Jesus Christ brings salvation to the sinner through Christ's own righteousness, giving the sinner perfect standing before a Holy God.

**Faith is very important:** Faith and believe are mentioned over 490 times in the Bible. The human race through their religions, want to be sincere enough in their religion to find God, be accepted by God and to please God. All they have to do is to go to the Bible and see how to find Him, be accepted by Him and please Him. Hebrews 11:6 “But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.” See how you can go to God's Word and find the truth. Faith is what pleases God! Faith is the one requirement of receiving God's grace and favor. Jesus Christ recognized how important faith was in the following verses. Matthew 15:21 - 28 “Then Jesus went thence, and departed into the coasts of Tyre and Sidon. And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, thou Son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil. But he answered her not a word. And his disciples came and besought him, saying, Send her away; for she crieth after us. But he answered and said, I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me. But he answered and said, It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs. And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table. Then Jesus answered and said unto her, O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt. And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.” Matthew 8:5 – 10 “And when Jesus was entered into Capernaum, there came unto him a centurion, beseeching him, And saying, Lord, my servant lieth at home sick of the palsy, grievously tormented. And Jesus saith unto him, I will come and heal him. The centurion answered and said, Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldest come under my roof: but speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this man, Go, and he goeth; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth it. When Jesus heard it, he marvelled, and said to them that followed, Verily I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.” Mark 10:46 - 52 “And they came to Jericho: and as he went out of Jericho with his disciples and a great number of people, blind Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus, sat by the highway side begging. And when he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to cry out, and say, Jesus, thou Son of David, have mercy on me. And many charged him that he should hold his peace: but he cried the more a great deal, Thou Son of David, have mercy on me. And Jesus stood still, and commanded him to be called. And they call the blind man, saying unto him, Be of good comfort, rise; he calleth thee. And he, casting away his garment, rose, and came to Jesus. And Jesus answered and said unto him, What wilt thou that I should do unto thee? The blind man said unto him, Lord, that I might receive my sight. And Jesus said unto him, Go thy way: thy faith hath made thee whole. And immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way.”

**Faith is above all other virtues:** Faith is the foundation upon which, the seven other graces of our spiritual temple are laid. You must read this next verse several times to attain the depth and richness of it. 2 Peter 1:5 - 7 “Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ,
to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ: Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord, According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity.’’ 2 Peter 1:8 “For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.”

**Faith is the very evidence of things not seen:** 1 Peter 1:8, 9 “Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory. Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.” The only hope we have is in Jesus Christ. To doubt His existence would leave no basis of hope. Hebrews 11:1 “Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.” Our hope for the future and our present love for Christ who holds the future are based upon our faith in Him.

**What is Faith?** In God's Word faith is used in a general sense and in a particular sense. First let’s look at faith in the general sense. There are three elements of faith in the general sense. 1. Knowledge of God's Word. 2. Accepting its claims as true. 3. Personally receiving its benefits or promises.

**Faith in the general sense:** 1. **Knowledge of God's Word.** Romans 10:17 “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.” Hebrews 4:2 “For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.” This verse expounds that they did not have faith in what was taught and preached to them. A person can have a lot of knowledge about the bible but if there is no faith it is useless. Faith is based upon the very best evidence of the word of God. Isaiah 40:8 “The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand forever.” God's Word is the truth and we must accept it, especially about our sinfulness and salvation through Jesus Christ. We do not have to have perfect knowledge of Christ and His work, but by faith, through His Word we are enlightened more and more revealing the spiritual truths that deepens our faith in Him. As we grow in faith we will grow closer to Him. Faith is not a leap in the dark, but is a well-lighted highway. Psalms 119:105, 130 “Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.” The entrance of thy words giveth light; it giveth understanding unto the simple.” Psalms 119:11 “Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.” Knowledge of God's Word is good but we must have it in our hearts as well. Romans 10:9, 10 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.”

2. **Accepting the claims of the Word of God as true is essential:** We must accept the Word of God, claim it as true, and believe all that the Word of God says who Christ is and what He did and how He can help us in our lives. We must yield our heart to all the claims of the bible concerning salvation through Jesus Christ. Our hope for the future and our present love for Him who holds the future are based upon our faith in Him. Why should fear enter our hearts? 2 Timothy 1:7 “For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a
sound mind."

3. **Personally receiving that which you know and acknowledge as true is essential regarding faith.** To know the truth concerning Christ and to acknowledge His claims as true does not profit anything unless we receive Him ourselves. *John 1:12* “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name.” It is possible that you may know that Christ is divine but reject Him as Savior. Faith involves action. We must take the action of receiving Christ and receive all that who He is and what He has done for us. It is useless to know in your head who Christ is and not receive Him into your heart as Lord and Savior. Faith is a matter of life and death. *John 3:36* “He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.” *1 John 5:11 - 13* "And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.” *Hebrews 4:2* “For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.” These three elements of faith are all bound together in the heart. These are the three elements of faith; the foundation of God's word, accepting the claims of God's Word as true and then personally receiving those claims as true.

**Faith in the particular sense:**

1. **Faith is used in connection with the name of God.** We cannot have any dealings with God without an absolute faith in His existence. We must believe He is real and can be seen with only the spiritual eyes of faith. We must see that God loves us. *John 3:16* “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son.” *Romans 5:8* “But God commendeth his love toward us.” We must put our faith in God who gave us His love unconditionally.

2. **When faith is used in connection with the person and work of Christ there must be a knowledge of Christ's claims as to who He is and what His mission is in the world.** First let us take a look at the person of Christ that He is God the Son of God. We must accept all of these claims as true.

**Scripture proves that Jesus Christ is God:**

1. John 5:20 “And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life.”

The words “Lord Jesus” is seen one hundred seventeen times and the words “Lord Jesus Christ” is seen eighty seven times in the New Testament. The Jews would call that blasphemy to call someone else Lord except for God. The Apostles called Him Lord, and all the Scriptures say He is Lord God.

Let’s consider Jesus Christ being God the Son. The Only Begotten when used of the Son is in the sense of unoriginated relationship; the begetting is not an event of time, however it is remote, but a fact irrespective of time. Jesus Christ did not become the Son of God but necessarily and eternally IS the Son of God. *John 17:5* “And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.” *John 8:56 - 59* “Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad. Then said the Jews unto Jesus, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM.” *Isaiah 43:11* “I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no Savior.” *Isaiah 9:6* “For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counselor, The mighty God, the everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.” *Luke 2:11* “For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Savior, which is Christ the Lord.” *John 1:1 - 3* “In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God. The same was in
the beginning with God. All things were made by Him; and without Him was not anything made that was made.” John 1:14 “And the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us, (and we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.” Colossians 1:15a “Who (Jesus Christ) is the image of the invisible God.” Colossians 1:16 “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers, all things were created by Him, and for him.” Genesis 1:1 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.” In chapter 22 “Creation” it will be discussed again about Jesus Christ being the creator. He is Omnificent (everywhere). Matthew 18:20 “For where two or three are gathered in my name, there am I in the midst of them.” Matthew 28:20 “Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world.” Christ is Omniscient (all knowing). He knew all things. Matthew 12:25 “And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them.” Jesus even prophesied future events. Matthew 16:25 “From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders, and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.” Matthew 17:22 “And while they abode in Galilee, Jesus said unto them, the Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men: and they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again.” Jesus is Omnipotent (all-powerful). Revelation 1:17, 18 “And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me. Fear not, I am the first and the last: I am he that liveth, and was dead, and, behold, I am alive forever more. Amen, and have the keys of hell and death.” Revelation 19:6 “And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.” Philippians 3:20, 21 “For our conversation is in heaven: from whence also we look for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ. Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.” Jesus Christ is Righteous. 1 John 2:1 “My little children, these things write I unto you, that you sin not. And if any man sin we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous.” 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he (God) hath made him (Jesus Christ) to be sin for us, who knew no sin.” All mankind is unrighteous. Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” He is Sovereign (one who holds all power and authority). Acts 10:36 “The word, which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: he is Lord of all.” Christ is Eternal. John 1:1 “In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God.” Jesus Christ is Judge. 2 Timothy 4:1 “I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom.” Christ the Lord Saves. Is Jesus Christ the Savior? The answer is yes and He is the Savior, and He is God. Isaiah 43:11 “I, even I, am the Lord; and beside me there is no Savior.” Titus 3:4, 6 “But after that the kindness and love of God our Savior toward man appeared.” Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior.” 1 Timothy 1:15 “This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.” Philippians 2:10 - 11 “That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.”

b. Paul in his Epistles, referred to Jesus as Lord: 1 Corinthians 12:3 “Wherefore I give you to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of God calleth Jesus accursed: and that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost.” Romans 10: 9 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God has raised him
from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” Hebrews 1:8 - 9 “But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is forever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity, therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.” c. Peter referred to Jesus as Lord: 2 Peter 3:18 “But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To Him be glory both now and forever Amen.” d. Thomas and the disciples proclaimed Jesus as Lord: John 20:28 “And Thomas answered and said unto Him, My Lord and my God.” John 20:25 “The other disciples therefore said unto him, We have seen the Lord.” e. Jesus Christ was with the Father in the beginning because Jesus Christ is the Only Begotten Son of God: John 17:5 “And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.” Luke 2:11 “An angel appeared to the shepherds in the field and said unto them.” For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Savior, which is Christ the Lord.” John 8:56 - 59 “Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad. Then said the Jews unto Jesus, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM. Then took they up stones to cast at him.” The Word of God is proven fact that Jesus Christ is God the Son. We cannot deny what the Scriptures have said and I have just presented to you a few of them.

Now we must personally accept all these claims as true concerning Christ's work in saving the lost. Adam died on the day he disobeyed God. I would like to teach here where we must all understand what happened in the Garden that day. Adam died! Did Adam and Eve fall over dead when they ate the fruit? NO, then what happened? What does the Bible mean when it said when they ate of the fruit that they would surely die? Genesis 2:17 “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” What is death? The word death in the Greek is thanatos, it has two meanings. A. It is physical death, the spirit of man separated from the body. B. It is spiritual death, the spirit of man separated from God. Death is the opposite of life. It never denotes non-existence. Spiritual life is conscious existence in communion with God. Spiritual death is a tormented conscious existence in separation from God. Both of these are the punishment, penalty of sin. Instead of Adam having God's life within him, the whole human race became separated from God because of sin. This was a spiritual death and physical death. Instead of having Gods nature, the whole human race became sinful and self-centered. Sin has separated Adam and the whole human race from God. God is HOLY, He cannot have fellowship with sin; He cannot be in the presence of sin. Fellowship with God was cut off. The human race is in Adam and is spiritually dead, and will die physically. The human race stands guilty before God. Romans 5:12 “Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.” Romans 5:15b “For if the offence of one (Adam) many be dead.” Romans 5:17 “For if by one (Adam) mans offence death reigned by one (Adam).” Romans 5:18 “Therefore as by the offence of one (Adam) judgment came upon all men to condemnation.” Romans 3:10 - 12 “As it is written, there is none righteous, no, not one. There is none that understandeth; there is none that seeketh after God. They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.” Romans 3:19 “Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.” Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” Jeremiah 17:9 “The heart is deceitful above all things, desperately wicked, who can know it.” Psalms 51:5 “Behold, I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.” Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” Revelation 21:8 “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the
The human race is condemned. The human race is guilty before God. The penalty for sin is death, hell. The human race deserves it. So now we know who the human race is and what is wrong with it and where it is headed. God is not done with the human race! He still wants a race of people that will obey, love, worship and glorify Him and to have fellowship with Him and live with Him forever. He wanted the human race to have a way back to Him not to be separated from Him. God cannot be in the presence of sin this is why we are separated from Him, and the penalty of sin is death. God is HOLY. How would He do this? When Adam and Eve sinned God showed Adam and Eve what the penalty of sin was. Genesis 3:21 “Unto Adam also and to his wife did the Lord God make coats of skins, and clothed them.” God showed that the death of an animal with the shedding of blood was a covering for their sin. From that time forth there would be sacrificing of animals, a shedding of blood for a covering for sin. Genesis 4:4 “And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof, and the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering.” Hebrews 9:22b “without the shedding of blood there is no remission.” Isaiah 53:7 “He (Jesus Christ) was oppressed and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth: He is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearsers is dumb, so He openeth not his mouth.” This was the prophecy of Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God to take away the sins of the world. John 1:29 “The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sins of the world.” Thirty times Jesus was called the Lamb of God in the New Testament. Romans 5:9 “Much more then being now justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath through Him.” Romans 3:25 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in His blood, to declare His righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.” Hebrews 9:28a “So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many.” Colossians 1:14, 19 “In whom (Jesus Christ) we have redemption through His blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” And, having made peace through His blood of His cross by Him to reconcile all things unto himself; I say, whether they be things in the earth, or things in heaven.”

So now we see Jesus Christ as our substitute for the penalty of sin. Let me show you in the Scriptures. Matthew 27:45, 46 “Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?” God turned His back on Christ because He became sin for the whole human race. God could not look on His Son, because He was sin. Christ died and shed His blood for us. Through His death and resurrection Jesus Christ the Lamb of God the Savior redeemed us and brought us back to God. Now we can be saved through Him. John 3:15 - 18 “That whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that He gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. He that believeth on Him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.” John 5:24 “Verily, Verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on Him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.” John 6:47 “Verily, verily, I say unto you. He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.” Romans 5:8 - 11 “But God commendeth His love towards us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. Much more then being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved form the wrath through Him. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of His Son, much more being reconciled we shall be saved by His life. And not only so, but we also
joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.” John 8:24 “I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am He, ye shall die in your sins.” 2 Peter 3: 9 “The Lord is not slack concerning His promise, as some men count slackness; but is long-suffering toward us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” God sent His Son to bring us back to Him. 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For He hath made Him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him.” After a person accepts Christ they become a child of God, accepted into the family of God, receives His divine nature, receives Christ’s Righteousness and Holiness, and the Holy Spirit comes to indwell in the believer and now this person, can have fellowship with God and love, worship, and glorify Him, and to commune with Him and live forever. It is only through the Lord Jesus Christ that God can accept the human race and make them His child and bring them into the Kingdom of His dear Son. Galatians 3:26 “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.” The human race is not all of God’s children. The human race is God’s creation not His children, read the verse again. Galatians 3:26 “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.” John 14:6 “I am (Jesus Christ) the way, the truth, and the life; no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”

Pray in Faith: After we receive all Christ is and what He did for us we have access to God by faith in our prayers. Hebrews 4:16 “Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.” 1 John 5:13 - 15 “These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God. And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.” Ephesians 3:12 “In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him.” James 1:5 - 7 “If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord.” We must have confidence that God does hear us and not to doubt His power in anything that we ask of Him. Romans 4:20 “He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God.” Mark 11:24 “Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.”

True Faith accepts all of God’s promises from His Word: We must act upon all His promises. Real faith gives life, reality, and activity to it. Faith counts every promise valid and no trial can shake it. Faith is acting upon what you believe. We need to go to God’s Word and read Hebrews chapter 11 and see the examples of others in their faith. In these verses we will see faith that gave life, reality, activity. They acted on faith. Hebrews 11:4 - 13 “By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh. By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God. But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him. By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith. By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place, which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with
him of the same promise: For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God. Through faith also Sara herself received strength to conceive seed, and was delivered of a child when she was past age, because she judged him faithful who had promised. Therefore sprang there even of one, and him as good as dead, so many as the stars of the sky in multitude, and as the sand which is by the sea shore innumerable. These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.”

The controversy of faith and works: There is no merit in faith alone! Faith does not save! It is faith in Christ Jesus the Lord that saves. Some people say that it does not matter what you believe as long as you are sincere in what you believe. Let me say that you might be sincere in what you believe but it could be a lie. There are many sincere people in the world that believe in many different beliefs, but if it is not what God say’s in His Word it is a lie and they need to repent. Galatians 1:8, 9 “But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. As we said before, so say I now again, If any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.” Many sincere people believe in works for salvation. Well I tell you now that it is not true. In Romans 4:1 - 12 “What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, hath found? For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works, Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin. Cometh this blessedness then upon the circumcision only, or upon the uncircumcision also? For we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness. How was it then reckoned? When he was in circumcision, or in uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision. And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also: And the father of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision only, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which he had being yet uncircumcised.” Paul is looking at the matter from God’s viewpoint and says we are made righteous in the sight of God without any works at all on our part. In James 2:14 -26 “What doth it profit, my brethren, though a man say he hath faith, and have not works? Can faith save him? If a brother or sister be naked, and destitute of daily food, And one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be ye warmed and filled; notwithstanding ye give them not those things which are needful to the body; what doth it profit? Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone. Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble. But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead? Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar? Seest thou how faith wrought with his works, and by works was faith made perfect? And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God. Ye see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only. Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way? For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.” James is looking at the matter that we are justified in the
sight of men by demonstrating that faith through good works, which should be the natural product of such faith. Men look at the outside and judge the person. God looks on the inside and judges the person. We do good works to show our faith in Christ. I do good works because my love for the Savior for saving me and giving me eternal life. Because God has given me so much in Christ is why I do good works.

**Where did Faith come from:**
Faith is the combined work of the Trinity, God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. *God the Father gives us faith.* Romans 12:3 “For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think: but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith.” Faith is a free gift. *God the Son perfects faith.* Hebrews 12:2 “Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.” *God the Holy Spirit administers faith.* Galatians 5:22 “But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith.” 1 Corinthians 12:7 - 9 “But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit”

There is also a human side to faith:
Reading God’s Word and hearing His word will help us grow in faith. Romans 10:17 “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.” The Holy Spirit will teach us His Word if we submit to Him and He will help us to grow in faith. Acts 4:4 “Howbeit many of them which heard the word believed; and the number of the men was about five thousand.” Galatians 3:2 - 5 “Are ye so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh? Have ye suffered so many things in vain? If it be yet in vain. He therefore that ministereth to you the Spirit, and worketh miracles among you, doeth he it by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?” Prayer develops faith. Luke 22:32 “But I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren.” Luke 17:5 “And the apostles said unto the Lord, Increase our faith.” Mark 9:24 “And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.” Matthew 17:19 - 21 “Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.”

**Faith has results:** We are saved by grace. Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.” Romans 1:17 “For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.” The power of faith is not what saves it is who we put our faith in and that is the Lord Jesus Christ. In the following chapters we are going to be studying what regeneration, justification, adoption, sanctification, and glorification are, and we receive all of these through our faith in Christ Jesus simultaneously.

**Faith gives us peace, assurance, and joy.** There is no earthly thing that could give me the peace, security, and joy that I have in Christ Jesus. You can have anything you want and it will not give you real peace, real security, and real joy. All things of this earth are going to pass away but faith in Christ will last for eternity. Romans 5:1 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.” 1 Peter 1:8 “Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory.” Isaiah 26:3 “Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee.” Ephesians 1:13, 14 “In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard
the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.” Romans 5:11 “And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.”

Dr. A. T. Pierson author of “Fact, Faith, Feeling is God's order” says “Satan wants to reverse the order and have feelings come first. Feelings will always make us doubt and question God's Word. What can separate us from the love of God and His promises? We must rest all our hope in God's Word because this is our foundation of all He promised and He cannot lie. We cannot let our feelings lead us in life but our faith and hope leads us to surrender all to Christ Jesus and His promises.”

Romans 8:22 - 39 “For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now. And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body. For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for? But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it. Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God. And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose. For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformable to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified. What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us? He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth. Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter. Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.”
CHAPTER 8

JUSTIFICATION
(accepted in the Beloved)

What is our standing before God? What is our relationship with God? What is God's attitude towards us? These questions will be answered in this chapter. Justification means to be accepted in the Beloved (Jesus Christ). We will see this great truth in God's Word.

The word justification is found 3 times in the New Testament. The word justify is found 4 times in the New Testament and 14 times in the Old Testament.

What does it mean in the Old Testament? What does it mean in the New Testament? In the Old Testament the word, justify is used “to judicially declare or cause to appear innocent or righteous.” In Exodus 23:7 “Keep thee far from a false matter; and the innocent and righteous slay thou not: for I will not justify the wicked.” Deuteronomy 25:1 “If there be a controversy between men, and they come unto judgment, that the judges may judge them; then they shall justify the righteous, and condemn the wicked.” Proverbs 17:15 “He that justifieth the wicked, and he that condemneth the just, even they both are abomination to the LORD.” The use of the word justify is a legal term meaning to declare righteous rather than to make righteous in a moral sense. In the New Testament it is the same meaning found in the Old Testament with even a more assertion that it is a legal term than a moral change. We will see this in Acts 13:39 “And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.” Romans 4:2 - 8 “For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works, Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.” Romans 5:1, 9 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.” What is God trying to reveal to us here? Our faith in Christ Jesus declares us righteous in God’s eyes giving us peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ and this righteousness is primarily in our relation to God. Justification has to do with our standing relation with God. Justification does not deal directly with man's conduct or his basic character. After a person receives Christ as Savior he is brought into a right relation with God.

None of our own righteousness can justify us with God. Philippians 3:9 “And be found in (Christ) him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith.” Romans 10:3 “For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.” Luke 18:9 - 14 “And he spake this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others: Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess. And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner. I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall
be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.” Luke 16:15 “And he said unto them, Ye are they which justify yourselves before men; but God knoweth your hearts: for that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God.” Romans 8:33 “Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifieth.”

Justification is the judicial or legal act of God by which those who put their faith and trust in Jesus Christ are declared to be righteous and free from guilt and punishment of sin.

There are two elements of justification. The one is negative and the other is positive. The negative side is that we seldom give much thought what it means to God, from His standpoint, to forgive sin. Forgiveness seems easy to us. We are sinners because we are in Adam. We have an obtuseness towards sin. But on the other hand God hates sin. He is Holy, and Righteous, but He freely forgives. We need to hate sin, and see sin as God sees it. If we could see how awful and terrible sin is to God then we could see how wonderful forgiveness is and appreciate it. What a loving, merciful God we have to forgive us. Micah 7:18, 19 “Who is a God like unto thee, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy. He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.” I myself need to see how sin is so vile, and how God hates sin but yet in His tender mercy forgives me.

Justification removes sin's guilt and its punishment. The justified sinner is made to realize that God no longer sees him as a guilty sinner deserving death but as one who has never sinned. The second element is the positive side. The sinner stands before God not guilty, because of his faith in Christ Jesus who is the righteous one. The sinner receives Christ's righteousness and stands before God in Christ's righteousness making him justified not guilty, innocent, righteous. The perfect righteousness of Christ is given to the sinner who has put His faith in Him. James 2:23 “And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God.” The word “imputed” in this phrase is sometimes called “imputation.” This is the act of God whereby He accounts righteousness to the believer in Christ, who has borne the believer’s sins in vindication of the law. “Imputation” means “to put to one’s account” or “to put to one’s credit.” Phliemon 17 – 18 perfectly illustrates “imputation:” “If thou count me therefore a partner, receive him as myself. If he hath wronged thee, or oweth thee ought, put that on my account.” Imputation thus means that Christ’s righteousness is imputed or credited to us. Romans 3:22 “Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference.” Romans 5:18 “Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.” James 2:23 “And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God.” Romans 5:1 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.” 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.” I believe this is one of the most wonderful, blessed, and loving verses in the Bible for understanding how God has accepted us. We do not have to go about exercising our own righteousness in hope that God will accept us. We receive the gift of righteousness of Christ because of our faith in Christ who is the righteous one. We become justified “not guilty” in God's eyes. God sees us in Christ! Ephesians 1:6, 7 “To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved. In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins,
We cannot earn justification. Keeping all the Ten Commandments will not justify us. There are no good works, sacraments or good deeds to earn justification. Romans 3:19, 20 “Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God. Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.” Romans 7:7 “What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, thou shall not covet.” Galatians 3:10, 11 “For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. But that no man is justified in the sight of God, it is evident: for, the just shall live by faith.” Romans 3:26 - 28 “To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus. Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? Of works? Nay: but by the law of faith. Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law.”

Justification is a free gift of God! We do not deserve it, we cannot earn it, which we have seen and read in the previous verses. God's grace (unmerited favor) is God's mercy upon us. Romans 3:23, 24 "For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God; Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.” “Freely” denotes that it is a gift. If someone gives you a gift, did it cost you anything? No, but it did cost the giver. So, is it free to you? Yes, now if someone gives you the gift, it is up to you to take it, receive it. I'm trying to show the analogy in our seeing what God's gift is to us. God's gift to us is His Son Jesus Christ, it did not cost us anything but it did cost God in giving His Son to make the full payment of sin in our place. Now God is freely giving us the gift of justification, now it is up to us to receive the Lord Jesus Christ, to receive the gift of justification. Titus 3:3 - 7 “For we ourselves also were sometimes foolish, disobedient, deceived, serving divers lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hateful, and hating one another. But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost; which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour; that being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.” 2 Corinthians 6:17, 18 “Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.”

Justification is only based on Christ's blood, righteousness and resurrection: In prior chapters I have shared a few songs from the song book “Inspiring Hymns” and here I would like to share another song that is appropriate for this part of Justification. The song is “There Is Power In the Blood” number 425, by L. E. Jones “Would you be free from your burden of sin? There’s pow’r in the blood, pow’r in the blood. Would you o’er evil a victory win? There’s a
wonderful power in the blood. There is power, power, Wonder-working power in the blood of the Lamb; There is power, power, Wonder-working power in the precious blood of the Lamb.”

Here are some verses from God’s Word that give the truth of Justification. Romans 3:24, 25 “Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation (to be satisfied with the sacrifice of sin) through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.” Romans 5:9 “Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.” Hebrews 9:22 “without the shedding of blood there is no remission.” 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.” Romans 4:24, 25 “But for us also, to whom it shall be counted, if we believe on him that raised Jesus our Lord from the dead; who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.”

In the Old Testament the sacrifices could not take away sins, but only covered them. But Christ came to take away the sins of the world. The sacrifices were types and pictures designed to point to that one great sacrifice. And that was Christ's sacrifice shedding His blood and death on the cross. Hebrews 10:10 - 14 “By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God; From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.” Romans 5:9 “Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.”

**Justification is received through faith in Christ Jesus.** We are justified by faith and through faith. Faith is the instrument by which we receive Christ's perfect righteousness. Romans 3:26, 28, 30 "To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus. Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. Seeing it is one God, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through faith.” Romans 5:1 "Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.”

**Justification is afforded by Faith in Christ alone:** Romans 4:5 "But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.” Acts 13:39 “And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.”

There are many trusting, loving, and sincere people in the world, but every one of them if they want to be justified in God's sight they need to put their faith and trust in Jesus Christ. The first step in justification is to realize that all our own righteous deeds will not justify us. The next step is to realize that it is our faith in Jesus Christ that will justify us.

Claim this verse Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.”

Justification is God changing His attitude towards us that He justifies us. And now our standing with God is in the beloved (in Christ). God sees us in Christ's righteousness!
CHAPTER 9

REGENERATION
(partakers of a Divine Nature)

Why Regeneration is important is because there are many false teachers and false religions in the world today that substitute other ways to become a Christian. There is only one way to be a Christian and that is through regeneration (the new birth). John 3:3, 7 “Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.” Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again.”

Regeneration is a direct act of God by which those who accept the Lord Jesus Christ; are admitted into the family of God. The word generation means, “to produce offspring” and re in the Latin means “again” so now we have the word (again to produce offspring) born again. Many people have substituted other teachings to become a Christian and are obtuse to the teaching of being born again.

Regeneration means to be partakers of a Divine Nature (Christ's Life in the believer). We will see this great truth in God's Word.

Baptism is not Regeneration!: I addressed this issue in another chapter what baptism means and what it is to the believer. Please turn to this chapter and read if necessary. I will not elaborate on this topic, but will give a few more comments on it. Baptism is the identification of the believer with their Savior and Lord. It pictures their death to the old life of sin and resurrection to their new life in Christ. Romans 6:4 “Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.” Baptism is not salvation nor does it produce salvation. You accept Christ then get baptized. But there are those who will not accept this teaching and adamantly grapple the false teaching that baptism produces salvation. This is just another way that Satan deceives those who do not want to study the scriptures thoroughly, comparing all scripture with scripture. It is imperative that you study the bible this way.

Reformation is not Regeneration!: You just don't turn over a new leaf, change your life style, or quit a habitual sin that you have been doing. Regeneration is about accepting a real person who paid the penalty of sin for you, and who never sinned, but died in your place and arose from the dead. You cannot earn, or work for regeneration. Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.”

Regeneration is a spiritual quickening (a new birth). Regeneration is a free gift just like justification and repentance. God has freely given us so many precious gifts through Christ. We receive a new Divine life. It is not a change in your old nature. It is the free gift of a new nature. Anyone can receive this new life if they repent and ask Christ to be their Lord and Savior. 2 Corinthians 5:17 “Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.” Colossians 1:27 “To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory.”

New desires are given to those who are born again. Before the new birth man is self-centered and desires the lust of the eyes, lust of the flesh, and the pride of life. There
was no seeking the spiritual things of God. 1 Corinthians 2:14 “But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” But after the new birth you will want to seek after the spiritual things of God. Romans 8:9 “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you, Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ he is none of his.”

One thing never to forget is that we still have that old nature that will battle against the new nature and that’s where you need the power of the Holy Spirit to give you victory over this old nature. The old nature does not go away. Romans 7:19 - 24 “For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do. Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. For I delight in the law of God after the inward man: But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death?” It is there and it will battle you, count on it. Old sinful desires will come back that you had pleasure in. Galatians 5:17 “For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.” Romans 8:4 “That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.” Romans 7:25 “I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.”

This Bible truth of regeneration is necessary for the reason that mankind are sinners, and because God is Holy and Righteous and cannot tolerate sin. I will cover both of these issues in the next three paragraphs.

The whole human race is in a sinful condition. Genesis 1:26 - 28 “And God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that crept upon the earth. So God created man in His own image, in the image of God created he him: male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.” Genesis 2:7 “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Adam was the first human being.

When God created man He created them with three parts, body, soul, and spirit. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” A. The body is the outer part of man, which can be seen. All the body parts are which we function with like the eyes, feet, nose, hands, and etc. B. The soul is the part of man, which cannot be seen. Genesis 2:7 “And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” The soul has three parts the mind, emotions and the will. The mind is what we think with and to express thoughts. We see that Adam expressed thoughts. Genesis 2:19 “And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof.” Emotions express love or hate. The will, is the free choice to do right or wrong, to obey or disobey. C. The spirit is that part of man which can know God and receive His life and a place
where God could come and dwell. Man can only glorify God by having His Spirit dwelling in him and to have a personal relationship and communication with him. The soul of man is the overpowering source in man. If man does not have the Spirit of Christ he will be self-centered, and the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life will rule him along with Satan's kingdom of darkness. If man has received His Spirit he can be led, taught, guided by the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life of service for God. But again man must have the will to receive Him and to live for Him.

Now many over look this verse in Genesis 1:31 “And God saw every thing that he had made, and behold, it was very good.” Everything that God made was perfect. God intended the lion to lay down with the lamb. He intended for the human race to live forever. He intended that there be no sin, death, disease, sickness, sorrows, weather disasters, and other natural disasters. The fall of man brought in all the pains of the human race. God created the first man, because He wanted a race of people who would obey, love, worship and glorify Him and live forever with Him. God wanted to have fellowship with the human race. Adam is the father of the whole human race. The human race is in Adam. But Adam rebelled. Adam and Eve sinned in the Garden of Eden. They disobeyed God. That was their sin. Disobedience is sin. Adam produced a race of sinners. The whole creation was ruined. Remember Genesis 1:31 “it was very good.” Now it was ruined.

Adam died on the day he disobeyed God. (I would like to teach here where we must all understand what happened in the Garden that day.) Adam died! Did Adam and Eve fall over dead when they ate the fruit? NO, then what happened? What does the Bible mean when it said when they ate of the fruit that they would surely die? Genesis 2:17 “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” What is death? The word death in the Greek is thanatos, it has two meanings. A. It is physical death, the spirit of man separated from the body. B. It is spiritual death, the spirit of man separated from God. Death is the opposite of life. It never denotes non-existence. Spiritual life is conscious existence in communion with God. Spiritual death is a conscious existence in separation from God. Both of these are the punishment, penalty of sin. Instead of Adam having God's life within him, the whole human race became separated from God because of sin. This was a spiritual death and physical death. Instead of having Gods nature, the whole human race became sinful and self-centered. Sin has separated Adam and the whole human race from God. God is HOLY, HOLY He cannot have fellowship with sin. He cannot be in the presence of sin. Fellowship with God was cut off. The human race is spiritually dead, and will die physically. The human race stands guilty before God. Romans 5:12 “Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.” Romans 5:15b “For if the offence of one (Adam) many be dead.” Romans 5:17 “For if by one (Adam) mans offence death reigned by one (Adam).” Romans 5:18 “Therefore as by the offence of one (Adam) judgment came upon all men to condemnation.” Romans 3:10 - 12 “As it is written, there is none righteous, no, not one.” There is none that understandeth; there is none that seeketh after God. They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.” Romans 3:19 “Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.” Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” Jeremiah 17:9 “The heart is deceitful above all things, desperately wicked, who can know it.” Psalms 51:5 "Behold, I
was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.” Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” Revelation 21:8 “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murders, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake, which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.” Galatians 5:19 – 21 “Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.” The whole human race is condemned. The human race is guilty before God. The penalty for sin is death, hell. The human race deserves it. Romans 3:10 “As it is written, there is none righteous no not one.” Romans 3:23 “For all have sin and come short of the glory of God.” If you are not born again you are lost and on your way to eternity in hell forever and forever. This is the second death. Man's spirit separated from God forever. Revelation 20:14, 15 “And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.” And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.” Revelation 2:11 “He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death.”

The work of God produces Regeneration: John 1:12, 13 “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.” Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.” And we (the human side) have to be willing to accept the Word of God and the Gospel. And to personally accept all the claims of what Christ did for us on the cross. And accept all the claims from God's Word what Christ said about who He is. Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.” John 3:14 - 18 “And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.”

In reviewing, we see the sinner repenting for their sin and putting their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ being regenerated (born again) which deals with the change in their nature while still having a the sinful nature. But a new life (the Holy Spirit) is implanted in they're soul. They are a “partaker of Christ's divine nature.” Regeneration is a rebirth or new birth. 2 Corinthians 5:17 “Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. Galatians 6:15 “For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creature.”
In all the issues of regeneration, justification, and adoption, all deal with a different phase of the complete work of salvation, they cannot be separated from each other nor given to be more important then each other. The word adoption means, “the placing of a son.” Both adoption and justification are legal terms. When we repent and put our faith in the Lord Jesus Christ we have been regenerated (born again) which deals with the change in our nature. And a new life (the Holy Spirit) is implanted in our soul. We are a “partaker of Christ's divine nature.” At that same time we receive justification which deals with our standing before God. God changed His attitude towards us because we are “accepted in the beloved (in Christ).” We receive Christ's righteousness. Adoption deals with a change of position with God. Adoption is not a putting into the family by spiritual birth, but a putting into the position of sons. God does not adopt believers as children; through our faith the Holy Spirit makes us God's son.

Let’s look at a few verses in the Bible about this adoption. Galatians 4:1 - 7 “Now I say, That the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father. Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world. But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.” Romans 8:14 - 19 “For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together. For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us. For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God.” John 1:12 “But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name.” In regeneration the believer becomes a child of God.

Before the foundation of the world God wanted the human race to be his children. But, because of sin, it separated us from Him, but He made away that we could be His child again, and live forever with Him. Ephesians 1:4 - 6 “According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.”

The actual act of adoption happens when a sinner repents for his sins and puts his faith in Jesus Christ. 1 John 3:2 “Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.” Galatians 3:26 “For ye are all children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.”

The completion of adoption takes place at Christ’s return. We should always remember that the unsaved world does not recognize believers as sons of God. Those who have put their
faith in Christ only understand adoption. Truths from the bible can be only understood to those who have the Holy Spirit. But in the day of resurrection when our bodies shall be redeemed, this blessed truth will be openly revealed to the amazement of the unsaved world. Romans 8:23 “And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.” The body shall be redeemed in order that we might receive the full inheritance, which has been promised through adoption. 2 Corinthians 5:10 “For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.” 1 John 3:1 - 3 “Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.” 1 Corinthians 15:51 – 52 “Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.” Adoption is a blessed truth that must be enjoyed and to really realize that we are God’s child by faith in Jesus Christ. And this is why death should not be feared. The Christian has the blessed hope of eternal life, conformed to the image of Christ, and know we shall be like Him.

There are many results in Adoption. Now we have a Father! God is our Father! Our Dad! What an awesome thought that the Eternal God the creator of all things is my Father! I’m a member of His family. In the Kingdom of His dear Son! We have His love, care, comfort, and an inheritance. Let’s see God’s Word for all these results. John 17:20 - 23 “Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word; That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one: I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.” Luke 12:27 - 33 “Consider the lilies how they grow: they toil not, they spin not; and yet I say unto you, that Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these. If then God so clothe the grass, which is to day in the field, and to morrow is cast into the oven; how much more will he clothe you, O ye of little faith? And seek not ye what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink, neither be ye of doubtful mind. For all these things do the nations of the world seek after: and your Father knoweth that ye have need of these things. But rather seek ye the kingdom of God; and all these things shall be added unto you. Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father’s good pleasure to give you the kingdom. Sell that ye have, and give alms; provide yourselves bags which wax not old, a treasure in the heavens that faileth not, where no thief approacheth, neither moth corrupteth.” 1 Peter 5:17 “Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you.” 2 Corinthians 1:3 – 4 “Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort: Who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God.” 1 Peter 1:3 - 5 “Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.” Romans 8:16, 17 “The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also
I would like to add that the child of God is not exempt of chastisement from the Father. As children of our earthly father we are not exempt from chastisement. So when we are disobedient we can expect some kind of chastisement. This is done to keep us in good fellowship with the Father and receive the many blessings that He is able to bless us with. If you ask, what does He do to discipline us; I only can tell you that if you are His child the Holy Spirit will let you know. I can share with you about my life how He has chastised me. Prayers not being answered, emptiness, unhappiness, problems that came up that I knew it was the Lord chastising me with to bring me back into His fellowship. Hebrews 12:5 - 11 “And ye have forgotten the exhortation which speaketh unto you as unto children, My son, despise not thou the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when thou art rebuked of him: For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth. If ye endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father chasteneth not? But if ye be without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are ye bastards, and not sons. Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live? For they verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness. Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.”

I would like to add one more thing about this chastisement from God. There are Christians today that are so obtuse to things that happen to them in their lives, they think they are accidents, having no clue that it is God trying to deal with them in their broken fellowship with Him. They is no sensitivity for the Holy Spirit speaking to their hearts about their life; they’re hearts have become cold and hard. These Christians are so carnal (governed by human nature and not the Holy Spirit) that they have become a friend of the world system. Friend there is no accidents in life! They happen for a reason, either to bring you or someone else to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ or to bring you or someone else back into God's fellowship. No matter what God does it is for the good.

Not only are there great results in adoption but there are many blessings belonging to the Family of God. Christians have fellowship, love, service, freedom, likeness, and privileges in this new family. Sharing the family name. Ephesians 3:14, 15 “For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named.” Philippians 2:9 “Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name.” 1 John 3:1 “Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.” Sharing the family likeness. 2 Corinthians 5:17 “Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.” 2 Peter 1:4 “Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.” Romans 8:29 “For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.” Sharing family love. 1 John 3:14 “We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.” John 13:34 “A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.” Sharing freedom of family relationship. Romans 8:15 “For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.” Galatians 4:6 “And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.” Sharing family service. John 14:23, 24 “Jesus
answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him. He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me. John 15:8 “Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.”

The life of a truly repented, converted believer in the Lord Jesus Christ will produce evidence in his new relationship, new life, and new position in Christ. Adoption and justification is a judicial or legal act of God for the believer. But now the believer has the Holy Spirit indwelling in him, and there should be as he matures in Christ; have some changes in his life. Christians should be led and guided by the Holy Spirit. Ephesians 2:1 - 7, 10 “And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus: That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.” There ought to be a true inward change to bring out a outward change in our lives. And this change is only because of the Spirit of Christ that dwells in us. Having a personal relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ should bring a change in our life. John 15:4, 5 “Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.”

A child of God should have confidence in the promises of God. Being a child of God we have access to God in a personal relationship. Romans 5:1, 2 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.” Ephesians 3:12 “In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him.” Hebrews 4:14 - 16 “Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.”

What a precious promise that God has given to us that we could have never earned, or worked for. We never deserved it. But God’s gift to us through our Lord Jesus Christ has granted many promises. And I hope you and I can grow more like Him through this gift. We need to give others this message of hope.
This Bible truth of Sanctification should be preached from the pulpits across the Nation. This truth can change the heart of the believer if yielded to the Holy Spirit and live a consecrated life unto God. It is another bible truth that not many Christians talk about because they do not know much about it. It is a promise that God has given to us, so we can grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.

The meaning of sanctification is the setting apart from sin unto God. The word sanctify is found 59 times in the Old Testament and 6 times in the New Testament. Sanctification is found 5 times in the New Testament. The thought of the word sanctify means, “to cut.” God wants us to be cut out of the world system, out of the kingdom of darkness, out from the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life. It is the separation from evil, and a dedication to God, and a holy life.

Sanctification is the separation from evil or uncleanness. The Old Testament has several verses that mention the word, sanctify. We need to look at some of these verses to see what God commanded Israel to do about being separated from sin. 2 Chronicles 28:1 - 5 “Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: but he did not that which was right in the sight of the LORD, like David his father: For he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and made also molten images for Baalim. Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, after the abominations of the heathen whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. He sacrificed also and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree. Wherefore the LORD his God delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him, and carried away a great multitude of them.” 2 Chronicles 28:24 “And Ahaz gathered together the vessels of the house of God, and cut in pieces the vessels of the house of God, and shut up the doors of the house of the LORD, and he made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem.” 2 Chronicles 29:1 - 5 “Hezekiah began to reign when he was five and twenty years old, and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. And he did that which was right in the sight of the LORD, according to all that David his father had done. He in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the house of the LORD, and repaired them. And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the east street, And said unto them, Sanctify now yourselves, and sanctify the house of the LORD God of your fathers, and carry forth the filthiness out of the holy place.” 2 Chronicles 29:15 - 19 “And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and came, according to the commandment of the king, by the words of the LORD, to cleanse the house of the LORD. And the priests went into the inner part of the house of the LORD, to cleanse it, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of the LORD into the court of the house of the LORD. And the Levites took it, to carry it out abroad into the brook Kidron. Now they began on the first day of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of the LORD: so they sanctified the house of the LORD in eight days; and in the sixteenth day of the first month they made an end. Then they went in to Hezekiah the king, and said, We have cleansed all the house of the LORD, and the altar of burnt offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the shewbread table, with all the vessels thereof. Moreover all the vessels, which king Ahaz in his reign did cast away in his
transgression, have we prepared and sanctified, and, behold, they are before the altar of the LORD.”

We can plainly see in what we just read in the Old Testament that sanctification is used in cleansing from evil or uncleanness. We can see that the Levites separated themselves from evil deeds and evil thoughts were also put out of their mind so that they could be filled with thoughts from God. With personal sanctification (cleansing) completed, the Levites were now ready to sanctify, or set apart, from the house of God all that was evil. They removed everything that belonged to idolatry all that was vile, filthy, and not suitable for worship. Jesus Christ did the same thing in Matthew 21:12, 13 “And Jesus went into the temple of God, and cast out all them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves, And said unto them, It is written, My house shall be called the house of prayer; but ye have made it a den of thieves.” He sanctified the temple in the sense that all that defiled and corrupted God's house was driven out (separated) from it. Here are some more verses that mention the word sanctify. 2 Chronicles 35:6 “So kill the passover, and sanctify yourselves, and prepare your brethren, that they may do according to the word of the LORD by the hand of Moses.” Exodus 19:10, 14 “And the LORD said unto Moses, Go unto the people, and sanctify them to day and to morrow, and let them wash their clothes. And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their clothes.” 1 Chronicles 15:12 “And said unto them, Ye are the chief of the fathers of the Levites: sanctify yourselves, both ye and your brethren, that ye may bring up the ark of the LORD God of Israel unto the place that I have prepared for it.” When you read these verses carefully, you see it refers to a personal cleansing.

I would like to explain here about a very important truth that helped me in this study of sanctification. All Christians today must realize that the church building is not where God dwells. Where then does God dwell? The word tabernacle literally means, “to dwell with you.” God said that He would (tabernacle) dwell with the Israelites in the structure called the Tabernacle during the time of the Old Testament. In the New Testament we read in John 1:14 “And the Word was made flesh and (tabernacled) dwellt among us.” Because Jesus Christ shed His blood and died on the cross He cleansed (sanctified) us of all our sins. And it is Him that can help cleanse (sanctify) our sinful ways to live a holy life. And now through the Lord Jesus Christ He can come and (tabernacle) dwell in the spirit of a person who has accepted Him as Lord and Savior. 1 Corinthians 3:16, 17 “Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are.” Acts 7:48 “Howbeit the most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet.” Acts 17:24 “God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands.” 2 Corinthians 6:16 “And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people. Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you.” Romans 8:9 “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.” These verses must hit home in the heart to really realize that now the Lord lives in us. We are sanctified (the believer is made holy) of God. We are set apart from sin unto God. Romans 12:1, 2 “I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world; but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.” Romans 6:3 - 13 “Know ye not, that so many of us as
were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection: Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him: Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him. For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.” 1 Corinthians 6:19 - 20 “What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God’s.” Galatians 2:20 “I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.” 2 Corinthians 7:1 “Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.” Holiness is the result of sanctification being cleansed of sin and dedicated unto God. When you were born again, you became a partaker of the divine nature. 2 Peter 1:4 “Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.” This new nature desires that which is right, pure, just and undefiled. As God sanctifies you and as you sanctify yourself, God's own moral nature is formed in you. You become a holy people. Titus 2:14 “Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.” God through sanctification makes you holy, fit for heaven. Ephesians 1:4 “According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love.” Therefore we are commanded to live holy lives, in word, thought, and deed under the power of the Holy Spirit.

The only way, that a believer is going to live a sanctified life, is by faith, claiming all these verses as true and yielding to the power of God's Word and the power of the Holy Spirit to experience the reality of God's promises. Hebrews 11:13 “These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.”

We must remember that sanctification takes place immediately when we are born again. The believer is set apart unto God. Both holiness and real freedom from sin begin at the new birth. By accepting Christ, a person receives a new standing in morality and behavior (holiness). At the new birth he is made to be good and righteous in the sight of God, because of the offering of the body of the Lord Jesus Christ. Hebrews 10:10, 14 “By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.” 1 Corinthians 1:2 “Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours.”

I would like you to notice in God's Word that we are called saints! The only way we are called saints is because we are in Christ Jesus. Saints is not applied merely to a person of exceptional holiness, or to those who, having died were characterized by exceptional acts of
saintliness. 2 Thessalonians 1:10 “When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.” The word saint is found 54 times in the New Testament and it is in reference of a believer in Christ Jesus. All believers are saints because of their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

Separation from evil is only part of sanctification. There must be a separation unto sin and a dedication unto God. Men who are set apart for the service of the Lord are said to be sanctified. Jeremiah 1:5 “Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.” John 10:36 “Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, Thou blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of God?” John 17:19 “And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth.” After you have put your faith in Jesus Christ you live a life of holiness (a sanctified life) like Christ did. Christ set Himself apart from the world. Christ should be our example for living a life of holiness. Romans 12:1, 2 “I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.”

Sanctification is that relationship with God into which believers enter by faith in Christ. Jesus said in Acts 26:18 “To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in (Christ) me.” We are separated unto God. 1 Corinthians 1:30 “But of him (God) are ye in Christ Jesus, who (Christ) of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption.” Jesus Christ is our wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption!

It is the work of the Trinity that people are sanctified. The Holy Spirit is the Agent in sanctification. The Holy Spirit is the executor of the Trinity. The word “Holy” refers to His essential moral character. Therefore, He is holy in Himself. It is through Him that produces holiness in every believer. 1 Corinthians 6:11 “And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.” 2 Thessalonians 2:13 “But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.” 1 Peter 1:2 “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.”

Jesus Christ is in the work of sanctification. Hebrews 10:10 “By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.” Hebrews 13:12 “Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood.” God is also in the work of sanctification. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly: and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” Jude 1 “Jude, the servant of Jesus Christ, and brother of James, to them that are sanctified by God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ, and called.”

Sanctification is completed in the future just like adoption is. When Christ returns sanctification and adoption will be completed in us. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” Jude 1 “Jude, the servant of Jesus Christ, and brother of James, to them that are sanctified by God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ, and called.”
him; for we shall see him as he is.” Philippians 3:20, 21 “For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.” Now if you have read the chapters on justification, and adoption you can see that they are all interwoven together with sanctification. Through God's grace He has freely given us all these promises to be completed at the return of His Son Jesus Christ. We will be holy and righteous before God and receive a new glorious body fashioned like unto Jesus Christ and live with Him for eternity.
CHAPTER 12

GLORIFICATION
(called unto His eternal glory)

1 Peter 5:10 “But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.” This Bible truth is the REDEMPTION (Glorification) of the bodies of all the believers into the glorious likeness of the Son God. This is another truth that should be preached more often. If you would ask a Christian to explain the doctrine of Glorification I would have to say there would be some stuttering. This is a blessed assurance that every believer must claim by faith.

We have the promise of a glorified body!!! This was promised by the Lord Jesus Christ in John 17:22, 23 “And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one: I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.” This glorification of unity and likeness of our Savior and our Father God will take place when we shall see Him and be changed into His glorious likeness. Only then will that UNITY be attained which Jesus prayed for in His prayer of John 17. Read John 14 - 17 and see the love of Christ for us and claim it by faith.

I have a question to ask you. How can organized religious church leaders pray for and teach to establish a world church pleading for unity while they deny the chief doctrines of the real Christian faith taught from God's Word? They reject the Trinity, Deity of Christ, justification by faith, being born again, bodily resurrection of Christ, faith in Christ alone for salvation. There are many more doctrines of the Bible they reject and these same church leaders teach false doctrines not found in the bible. And yet they profess a faith of godliness. Do not be deceived! 2 Peter 2:1 “But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.” True unity is truly accepting by faith all the claims from God's Word of the Lord Jesus Christ of who He is and what He done for us.

Paul wrote by the inspiration of the Holy Spirit in Romans 8:18 “For I reckon (know) that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.” Colossians 3:4 “When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.” Colossians 1:27 “To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory.”

Believers are called to the glorification of the body and have a blessed assurance of it. The Holy Spirit guarantees the glorification of the body of all believers. We are called to it. 1 Peter 5:10 “But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.” 1 Corinthians 2:9, 10 “But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.” Believers are assured of the glorification of the body. 1 John 3:2 “Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall
appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.” Romans 8:18b “For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.” The Holy Spirit guarantees the glorification of the body. Ephesians 1:11-14 “In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will: That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ. In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of promise. Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.”

The purpose of the glorified body is to complete the work the Lord has begun in all believers. Christ wants to bring our bodies into perfection. Philippians 1:6 “Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ.” Hebrews 2:10 “For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.” 2 Corinthians 3:18 “But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.” The promise of this great blessed truth is to ease the fear and anxiety concerning death. Death is feared because of the thought of what might follow. All mankind has this fear. But for the Christian they have the promise of the glorification of the body. Believers need not to fear death or of what lies beyond. 2 Timothy 1:10 “But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.” Jesus Christ destroyed the works of the devil. Hebrews 2:14, 15 “Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.” John 14:1-3 “Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me. In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.” 2 Corinthians 5:1, 2 “For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven.” 1 Corinthians 15:55-57 “O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.” The glorification of the body is the evidence of God's grace. Ephesians 2:7 “That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.” Ephesians 1:5, 6 “Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.” The word, predestinate means to fore ordained. The exercising of faith, which gives the power to become the sons of God through the Lord Jesus Christ, is what was predestinated or foreordained by God. Predestination, therefore, points to that time in the plan and purpose of God when every born again one will be presented as a son of God to God. 1 John 3:1a “Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God.”

How can believers be sure that the bodies will share that moment when Christ shall appear? Jesus Christ promised us, and He cannot lie. John 5:28, 29 “Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, And shall come forth.” John 10:3 “To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by
name, and leadeth them out.” This promise of the glorified body is instantaneous. 1 Thessalonians 4:16 “For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first. Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.” Hebrews 10:23 “Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised.)” 2 Corinthians 1:20 “For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.”

**The Lord Jesus Christ’s resurrection is the power that guarantees this glorified body.** We are going to read almost all of 1 Corinthians 15 because it is the chapter in the Bible that gives us the promise through Christ’s resurrection that we will be raised up also through the Holy Spirit. Let’s read God’s Word and see the wonderful promise that we can fully trust. 1 Corinthians 15:12 - 26 “Now if Christ be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead? But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is Christ not risen: And if Christ be not risen, then is our preaching vain, and your faith is also vain. Yea, and we are found false witnesses of God; because we have testified of God that he raised up Christ: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not. For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised: And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; ye are yet in your sins. Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable. But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept. For since by man (Adam) came death, by man (Christ) came also the resurrection of the dead. For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ’s at his coming. Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.” 1 Corinthians 6:14 “And God hath both raised up the Lord, and will also raise up us by his own power.” Romans 8:11 “But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.”

**There will be a complete transformation of our bodies.** We will have to read most of 1 Corinthians 15 to see what God's Word says about the glorification of the body. 1 Corinthians 15:35 - 54 “But some man will say, How are the dead raised up? And with what body do they come? Thou fool, that which thou sowest is not quickened, except it die: And that which thou sowest, thou sowest not that body that shall be, but bare grain, it may chance of wheat, or of some other grain: But God giveth it a body as it hath pleased him, and to every seed his own body. All flesh is not the same flesh: but there is one kind of flesh of men, another flesh of beasts, another of fishes, and another of birds. There are also celestial bodies, and bodies terrestrial: but the glory of the celestial is one, and the glory of the terrestrial is another. There is one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars: for one star differeth from another star in glory. So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption: It is sown in dishonour; it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness; it is raised in power: It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body. And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam (Christ) was made a quickening spirit. Howbeit that was not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual. The first man is of the earth, earthly: the second man is the Lord (Christ) from heaven. As is the earthly, such are they also that are earthly: and as is the heavenly, such are they also that are heavenly. And as we have borne the image of the earthly, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.
Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption.  Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.  For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.  So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.”

We have now completed all of the Doctrinal truths of the Bible and we should all memorize verses for each of these truths that we studied and hide them in our hearts that we may grow in faith, knowledge, grace and in the Lord Jesus Christ.  It should motivate us to yield to the power of His Word and the power of the Holy Spirit to live a sanctified life in dedication to God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.
I have repeatedly said, throughout this book, that it is not an exhaustive study on the subjects of content that I have presented to you thus far. The study of the church is without exception here. Books upon books have been written about the church. I will not even scratch the surface here about the church, but, it will give you some foundational facts about the church.

1st century history presents such an astonishing commitment of faith from a group called Christians who are the body of Christ, who forms the church. The belief of the bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ (which I already presented to you in chapter 3) started a fire of faith in the hearts of this body that could not be smothered out by the worst of torturous executions carried out by the Romans. These born again believers of the 1st century would rather die then give up what they knew in their hearts to be true. I found reading Dr. Edwin M. Yamauchi’s interview with Lee Strobel very interesting because I love history and he gave some insights of what 1st century historian writers wrote about after Christ arose from the dead. I find history fascinating, and I think it is abetting at this time to present a quote from a Roman, called Pliny the Younger who referred to the Christians in his historical writings that is worth mentioning. Pliny the Younger wrote this particular historical document around A. D. 111 and shows the unwavering, solid faith the body of believers were committed to. “I have asked them if they are Christians, and if they admit it, I repeat the question a second and third time, with a warning of the punishment awaiting them. If they persist, I order them to be led away for execution; for, whatever the nature of their admission, I am convinced that their stubbornness and unshakable obstinacy ought not to go unpunished… They also declared that the sum total of their guilt or error amounted to no more than this: they had met regularly before dawn on a fixed day to chant verses alternately amongst themselves in honor of Christ as if to a god, and also to bind themselves by oath, not for any criminal purpose, but to abstain from theft, robbery, and adultery…This made me decide it was all the more necessary to extract the truth by torture from two slave-women, whom they called deaconesses. I found nothing but a degenerate sort of cult carried to extravagant lengths.”(15) What was presented in this writing? It presented a body of believers called Christians who met in fellowship with one another, in a particular place, on a certain day, and worshipped, and taught each other to promise to keep high ethical standards amongst themselves and who had a faith that was unwavering. Ending on that note I will now bring you the study of the church.

There are many sincere religious people today think God dwells in the structural part of the building, which they call a church. With the help of the Holy Spirit and the Word of God I will explain what the true meaning, primary goal and purpose of the church is as commanded by the Lord Jesus Christ. I believe the Scriptures teach that the so called church is a body of true born again believers, associated by covenant in the faith and fellowship of the Gospel, observing the ordinances of Christ, governed by His laws, and exercising the gifts, rights, and privileges invested in them by His Word. Its Scriptural
officers are pastors, sometimes called bishops or elders, and deacons, whose qualifications, claims, and duties are defined in the epistles to Timothy and Titus.

Hebrews 10:25 “Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.” The Greek word “assembly” means “from out of” and “a calling.” Assembly literally means an “assembly of called out ones.” This word was used among the Greeks of a body of citizens gathered to discuss the affairs of the State. In the Old Testament it is used to gathering of Israel, summoned for a definite purpose. In the New Testament it has two applications. The whole company of the redeemed throughout the present era, the company of which Christ said in Matthew 16:18 “I will build my church,” which is further described as the church which is His Body. And the other is a company of consisting professed believers. Ephesians 1:22 - 23, 4:12 “And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all. For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.” Colossians 3:15 “And let the peace of God rule in your hearts, to the which also ye are called in one body; and be ye thankful.”

You must realize that the church building is not where God dwells. Where then does God dwell? The word tabernacle literally means, “to dwell with you.” God said that He would (tabernacle) dwell with the Israelites in the structure called the Tabernacle during the time of the Old Testament. In the New Testament we read in John 1:14 “And the Word was made flesh and (tabernacled) dwelt among us.” Jesus Christ shed His blood and died on the cross and arose bodily from the dead to cleanse us of all our sins. And it is Him that can help cleanse (sanctify) our sinful ways to live a holy life. And now through the Lord Jesus Christ He can come and (tabernacle) dwell in the spirit of a person who has accepted Him as Lord and Savior. 1 Corinthians 3:16, 17 “Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy: for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are.” Acts 7:48 “Howbeit the most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet.” Acts 17:24 “God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands.” 2 Corinthians 6:16 “And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? For ye are the temple of the living God: as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.” Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you.” Romans 8:9 “But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.” These verses must really make us realize the Lord lives in us and not in a building made with hands. 1 Corinthians 6:19 - 20 “What? Know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Spirit which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own? For ye are bought with a price. Therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.” The church is a body of born again believers, which is called the body of Christ. Ephesians 1:22 - 23, 4:12 “And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all. For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:” Hebrews 12:2 “Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.” I believe the Scriptures teach
that "the church which is His body" is the entire company of believers in Christ.

Hebrews 10:25 “Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.”

The first part of this verse is telling us that the body of Christ needs to meet with each other. In the New Testament they gave this example. Acts 4:31 “And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.” Acts 12:12 “And when he had considered the thing, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose surname was Mark; where many were gathered together praying.” Acts 20:7, 8 “And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight. And there were many lights in the upper chamber, where they were gathered together.”

The first part of this verse is telling us that the body of Christ needs to meet with each other. In the New Testament they gave this example. Acts 4:31 “And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.” Acts 12:12 “And when he had considered the thing, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose surname was Mark; where many were gathered together praying.” Acts 20:7, 8 “And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight. And there were many lights in the upper chamber, where they were gathered together.”

The local (church) body of believers or the assembly of called out ones the body of Christ have some commands and commissions by God. The local body of believers functions as a living body. It is the living body of Christ not an organization, company, or social club. Christ expresses His life through the members. All members are needed and must function and function together. The local assembly of called out ones meet together at their meeting place and they're goal is to worship the Lord in spirit and truth and to hear the word of God preached to help edify and encourage their faith in Christ and to preach the Gospel to the lost. John 4:23, 24 “But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him. God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.” Romans 10:17 “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.”

The great example of the first (local church) local assembly of called out ones is in Acts 2:41 – 47 “Then they that gladly received his word (the preaching of God's Word) were baptized: (baptism) and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls. (salvation of lost souls) And they continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine (All that Christ is and what He did) and fellowship, (the building up or encouraging each other) and in breaking of bread, (the Lords supper) and in
prayers. And fear came upon every soul: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles. And all that believed were together, and had all things common; And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, (giving) as every man had need. And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart, Praising God, (worshipping) and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.”

Colossians 3:16 “Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.”

The Holy Spirit has given gifts to the body of believers so that they can lead others to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ. 1 Corinthians 14:12 “Even so ye, forasmuch as ye are zealous of spiritual gifts, seek that ye may excel to the edifying (lost souls accepting Jesus Christ as Savior being added to the body of Christ) of the church.”

1 Corinthians 4:12 “Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord. And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God, which worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will.”

There is a designated structure in the body of believers to represent Him for the care of the flock (the sheep, body of believers). Let us read about God’s designated structure to lead the assembly of called out ones, the local body of believers. Hebrews 13:17 “Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.”

Acts 20:28 “Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.” Acts 14:23 “And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.” 1 Peter 5:1 - 3 “The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed: Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; Neither as being lords over God’s heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.” 1 Timothy 3:1, 2 “This is a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work. A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality, apt to teach.” 1 Timothy 5:17 “Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word and doctrine.” Titus 1:5 - 7 “For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee: If any be blameless, the husband of one wife, having faithful children not accused of riot or unruly. For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not selfwilled, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre.” Philippians 1:1 “Paul and Timotheus, the servants of Jesus Christ, to all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons.”

Now you have seen and read from God’s Word that there are leaders in the body of Christ. I do believe that the local independent church is to be presided over by one leader who has been “called to the ministry.” He might be called a bishop, elder or pastor but, I do prefer that he be
called the pastor and to be the principle teacher and preacher of God’s Word. The pastor, bishop or elder of a local independent church should be his primarily concern. He counsels, presides over board meetings, visits the sick, marries the young, and buries the dead. But it must be remembered that the Chief Head of the Church is not a man but the Lord Jesus Christ. I believe that the local New Testament church should be independent and not affiliated with any specific denomination with no specific person as the head of all local independent churches. Let us look at the different leaders mentioned in the bible and see their duties.

The bishops are entrusted with the spiritual oversight of the flock. The Greek word episkopos literally means “overseer,” and is translated that way in some versions of Scripture. These leaders, whose qualifications are spelled out in the Pastoral Epistles (1st and 2nd Timothy, and Titus), are to be mature. For this reason, they are also called elders. The words “bishop” and “elder” are interchangeable in the New Testament. This is obvious in Paul's letter to Titus 1:5 - 7 “For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldst set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee: If any be blameless, the husband of one wife, having faithful children not accused of riot or unruly. For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not self-willed, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre.” An elder, then, is a bishop and a bishop is an elder. There is no distinction between the two. The words give only different emphases. “Elder” (presbuteros) denotes maturity and “bishop,” oversight. However, they refer to the same leaders, which are plural in number. Acts 14:23 “And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.”

**What about the pastor?** Where is he in all of this? Did not God give some pastors? Yes, He did. Ephesians 4:11 “And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers.” But this refers to the same body of leaders elsewhere called “bishops” and “elders,” not a single leader. The word “pastor” (singular) is absent from most translations of the New Testament. The plural form “pastors” occurs only once, in Ephesians 4:11. It is a translation of the Greek word poimen. Poimen is translated “shepherd” or “shepherds” 16 times in the King James Version. The verb form poimaino also occurs in the New Testament. It means to “shepherd” or “pastor” a flock. But poimen (pastor), presbuteros (elder) and episkopos (bishop/overseer) all refer to the same function. It is unbiblical to speak of the pastor, on one hand, and the elders, on the other, as if they were somehow different. The Scripture makes no distinction whatsoever between the two. This is fairly easy to demonstrate in the New Testament. In 1 Peter 5:1 - 3 “The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed: Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.” Look at all three words they are in either noun or verb form - are applied to the same group of leaders. The apostle writes to the church leadership: The “elders” (presbuterous) which are among you I exhort...feed (poimanate, “shepherd,” “pastor”) the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight (episkopountes.)” Peter expected the body of elders and bishops to pastor the flock and oversee it. Can there be any doubt, then, that the modern idea of distinguishing between elders, bishops, and pastors is wrong? I will explain how I feel about this in the next paragraph.

Paul makes no distinction between elders, bishops, and pastors. These are different terms for the same function. And so, the idea of each church having one man who is “the pastor” who is separate from the body of elders is a tradition without Scriptural support. But someone needs to be tending to the body of believers at a particular local independent church. God is not a God
of confusion. If a church decides to call their leader a bishop, elder, pastor or preacher I do not have problem with that. But what I do not want is someone who becomes a dictator in the church and tries to take control without the scriptural evidence of how he wants to lead the body of believers like we will see with the example of Diotrephes.

Having said this, here is the example of a leader ruling the church as “company commander.” His name was Diotrephes. John wrote of this man in 3 John 9, 10 “I wrote unto the church: but Diotrephes, who loveth to have the preeminence among them, receiveth us not. Wherefore, if I come, I will remember his deeds which he doeth, prating against us with malicious words: and not content therewith, neither doth he himself receive the brethren, and forbiddeth them that would, and casteth them out of the church.”

Here is a leader with far too much power in the church. He personally put people out of the congregation and refused to welcome the brethren. He did so without God's authority. This is the leading we do not want from a pastor, bishop, elder or preacher.

I believe in a pastor to lead a local independent church endued with power of the Holy Spirit being lead by the Word of God. There have been a many great preachers of the Gospel. They have been very loving and caring for their flock. The first one that comes to mind is Pastor Chares Haddon Spurgeon who probably was one of the greatest preachers of the Gospel.

**What about deacons in the local body of believers?** Deacon and Deaconess are English words that were derived from the Greek word diaconos, meaning a servant. The original Greek word was used in a general sense for all servants, with no religious connotation, however the apostles adopted the term for individuals who were given the responsibility of taking care of practical matters within the church, beginning with Acts 6:1 - 6 “And in those days, when the number of the disciples was multiplied, there arose a murmuring of the Grecians against the Hebrews, because their widows were neglected in the daily ministration. Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples unto them, and said, It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables. Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word. And the saying pleased the whole multitude: and they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Ghost, and Philip, and Prochorus, and Nicanor, and Timon, and Parmenas, and Nicolas a proselyte of Antioch.”

They were regarded as an element of the “ministry” - minister, servant and deacon all originated from the same Greek word deacons primarily served (diakonein) the physical needs of people so that the apostles could concentrate on ministering (diakonia) the Word of God. Deacons were not however limited - some of the deacons were also teachers and evangelists, as was Stephen who is often regarded as the first Christian martyr, and Philip who successfully preached in Samaria.

I believe that the body of Christ the assembly of call out ones will see the "Blessed Hope," the personal, imminent, pre-tribulational, and pre-millennial appearance of the Lord Jesus Christ to rapture His redeemed ones of the local body of Christ (local church).  
1 Thessalonians 4:13 - 18 “But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope. For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him. For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words.”  
2 Thessalonians 2:1 - 2 “Now we beseech
you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him. That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand.” 1 John 3:2 “Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.” 1 Corinthians 15:51 - 52 “Behold, I shew you a mystery: We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed.”

I believe that Christ will return to earth after the seven year tribulation period with His saints to establish the Millennial Kingdom which will literally be on the earth and ruled by Christ from the throne of David in Jerusalem. Luke 1:32 “He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David.” Acts 2:29 - 30 “Men and brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne.” 2 Thessalonians 1:6 - 12 “Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you: And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day. Wherefore also we pray always for you, that our God would count you worthy of this calling, and fulfil all the good pleasure of his goodness, and the work of faith with power: That the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you, and ye in him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ.” Revelation 20:1 - 6 “And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand year. Praise God for this promise.
CHECK GUIDE FOR A GOOD BIBLE CHURCH

This is a guide line to go by if you are searching for a church or the church you attend now. I hope this guide will help you in determining your choice of church. It is a good biblical and fundamental guide to adhere to when choosing a church.

Does your church believe?

1. In the **verbal** (verbal means every word of scripture is God-given) **plenary** (plenary means that all parts of the bible are equally authoritative) **inspiration** (inspiration means God supernaturally guided the biblical authors to write) **inerrancy** (inerrancy means without error) of the preserved Scriptures, it is the **final authority** for our lives and uses the King James Bible.

2. That you are saved through faith in Christ, by grace alone, and that not anything of ourselves, that it is a gift of God, and not of any kind of works.

3. In the Triune God, composed of God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit.

4. That the Lord Jesus Christ was born of a virgin, being conceived by the Holy Spirit, and lived a sinless life for thirty-three years and was God manifested in the flesh.

5. That the Lord Jesus Christ bled and died and paid the sin debt on Calvary’s cross through the shedding of His own sinless blood.

6. That the Lord Jesus Christ arose bodily from the dead for our justification.

7. That the Son of God, Jesus Christ, ascended into heaven and currently sits at the right hand of God the Father interceding for us as our High Priest.

8. That Christ is our only advocate, mediator, and intercessor.

9. That the Holy Spirit is a Divine Person who convicts the world of sin, righteousness and judgment.

10. That the Holy Spirit is the Supernatural Agent in regeneration (*being born again*) baptizing all believers into the body of Christ.

11. That all men are born with a sin nature and are condemned by God, and in need to be born again.

12. In the eternal security of those who have been born again.

13. That the church is the bride of Christ, consisting of all born again believes and are waiting for His imminent return for His church, called the rapture.

14. That the autonomy (**independence**) of the local church and that Christ alone is the head of the church.

15. That water Baptism is by emersion and the Lord’s Supper are Scriptural ordinances of obedience for the church and that there is no saving power it all in these ordinances.

16. That the majority of professing Christianity is in apostasy, and that true Christians need to practice biblical separation from such apostasy.

17. In the literal, physical, second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ to return to the earth to set up His Kingdom for the millennial reign after the great tribulation.

18. In a literal glorious Heaven for the saved, and in a literal tormented conscious existence in Hell for the lost.

19. That Satan is a literal living being who opposes God, and who will be condemned to eternal punishment in the lake of fire.

20. In preaching on repentance towards God and faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

21. In preaching against all sin and that man should repent of their sin.
22. That the body of Christ should evangelize the community with the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

My recommendation is that you make a copy of this guide line when calling around in searching for the church you want to attend or join. I would also show it to the pastor, preacher, priest, elder, or whoever is in the position of leadership of the church you now attend or thinking of attending or are a member of and show him this guide line to see if they are in agreement with these fundamental truths. Do not let anyone intimidate you in not using this guide line. It is a biblical fundamental guide to go by because it could mean your future destiny; in the life to come, and the life you now are living. So many people today are so unaware, ignorant, and apathetical, about the church they attend because they just want to be comfortable, to feel good, to be upbeat and to have it fun and exciting instead of following the 22 statements stated above. Some people have been attending the same church for years because it is the church they were brought up in and have a fear to leave it because of what family and friends might say or it could be that it is in a great location for you and it would cause inconvenience for you or your family if you had to attend a church farther away. Well let me ask you a question. Is the church you are now attending in agreement with the 22 fundamental statements stated above? Do you know? Some of you probably don’t know; and are obtuse of these statements. You might not believe in some of them or all of the 22 fundamental statements stated above. I do believe it is very, very important to know why you attend the church you now attending and that you need to be truthful with yourself on this issue. I cannot emphasize how important it is to go over these statements. I do hope you will see the seriousness of this and to be awakened of the truth.
CHAPTER 14

THE ORDINANCES: A. BAPTISM  B. THE LORD’S SUPPER

A. BAPTISM

Baptism and the Lord’s Supper are ordinances that were delegated by Christ to observe. I believe the ordinances of Baptism and the Lord’s Supper is to be observed under the authority of the local church.

First we will look at Baptism. Jesus said in Matthew 28:19 “Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.”

What is an ordinance? It is a ceremony, or act to picture a spiritual truth that you can see and feel. What does the word Baptism mean? The word Baptism comes from two words in the Greek. The noun is baptisma, baptism, consisting of the process of immersion, submersion and emergence (from bapto, to dip), is used of John’s baptism, and of the Christians baptism. The verb baptizo is to baptize, primarily a frequentative form of bapto, to dip, was used among Greeks to signify the dyeing of a garment or the drawing of water by dipping a vessel into another. It was used of the rite performed by John the Baptist who called upon the people to repent that they might receive remission of sins. Those who obeyed came “confessing their sins,” thus acknowledging their unfitness to be in the Messiah’s coming Kingdom. Distinct from this baptism enjoined by Christ in Matthew 28:19 was a baptism to be undergone by believers thus witnessing to their identification with Him in death, burial, and resurrection. **Baptism is an outward expression of what took place spiritually inside when one accepts Jesus Christ as Savior.** It is a ceremony, which pictures our representative union with Christ in His death, burial, and resurrection. Acts 19:5 “When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.” Romans 6:3 - 6 “Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection: Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.” Galatians 3:27 “For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.” Colossians 2:12 “Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.” Matthew 28:19 would indicate that the baptized person was closely bound to, or became the property of, the one into whose name he was baptized.

When a believer stands in the water, (which pictures the death of Christ) and then he is put under the water (which pictures the burial of Christ) he is identifying his union with Jesus Christ. Christ is his representative, substitute on the cross dying, and shedding His blood for the penalty for his sins. 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.” Baptism is acknowledging our own death with Christ and the burial of your old sinful life. The burying is looking towards the resurrection. Colossians 2:12 “Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.” When the believer comes up out of the water (which pictures Christ’s resurrection) he is identifying his union with Christ in arising with Him in a new life. Christ lives in the believer and he is in Christ. Romans 6:4 “Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as
Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.” Romans 7:6 “But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.” 2 Corinthians 5:17 “Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.” Colossians 3:10 “And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him.” We must realize that Christ lives in the believer. Galatians 2:20 “I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.” Romans 6:6 - 13 “Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him: Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him. For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.” Baptism pictures our death to sin, and resurrection to a new life.

Can baptism save us? No, it is Salvation by grace through faith alone. Works does not save us. But many will still argue the fact that in order to be saved you must be baptized. We need to look again and see the Truth from God's Word. Those who believe that you must be baptized to be saved are claiming that the redemptive work of Christ is not enough for salvation. This is the verse they claim that you must be baptized to be saved. Acts 2:38 “Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. In studying this verse the Holy Spirit revealed to me through the Scripture that baptism is the picture of the remission (forgiveness) of sins, let me explain. When I got baptized, I was testifying, professing my Faith in Christ. That He died on the cross, and He shed His blood in my place for the penalty of sin, which is the remission of sins. And was buried and arose bodily from the grave; it is not the act of baptism itself but in the redemptive work of Christ that saves. So now we know what baptism is showing, it is the redemptive work of Christ. Here is what Acts 2:38 is really saying. “Then Peter said unto them, repent (Know that you are a sinner, change your mind about yourself and accept Christ). And be baptized in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit. Because Jesus Christ died and shed His blood for you and redeemed you so you could be forgiven of your sins, and be made righteous, justified and a child of God in Christ and receive the Holy Spirit when you accept Christ.” This is my interpretation of this verse. What other interpretation could there be.

Now let me give you several verses that prove that the redemptive work of Christ is sufficient for salvation. Notice that these verses do not mention baptism but Faith in a person the Savior Jesus Christ. No matter how much they boast about baptism being a saving factor of the souls of men, they have been mistaken. Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith, and that not of ourselves: it is a gift of God: Not of works lest any man should boast.” Hebrews 11:6 “But without faith it is impossible to please Him.” Acts 10:23 “To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.” Romans 3:25 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.” Hebrews 9:22 “And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.” Hebrews 10:18 “Now where remission of these is, there is
no more offering for sin.” Matthew 26:28 “For this is my blood of the New Testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.” Ephesians 1:7 “In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.” 1 Corinthians 1:30 “But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption.” Colossians 1:14 “In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” Hebrews 9:12 “Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.” Romans 10:9 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” John 3:16 “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him, should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

I have never heard other believers pray this prayer; “thank you baptism and Jesus for saving me.” But I have always heard believers pray “thank you Lord Jesus for saving me.” If you read the Gospel of John you will see over and over that it is believing and faith in the person the Son of God not baptism. I would like to also add that there is no scriptural evidence of infant baptism. Baptism is for those who have accepted Christ as Lord and Savior. Acts 8:35 – 38 “Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus. And as they went on their way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, here is water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.” Acts 8:12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.” There are many more verses that show that baptism was for those who could hear the word of God and repent and receive the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior. The blood of Christ washes the infant’s sin away and will go to heaven if the infant dies. Baptism is performed under the authority of the local church to show forth our faith in the crucified, buried, and risen Savior.

B. LORD’S SUPPER

The second ordinance delegated by Christ is the Lord's Supper. The Lord’s Supper, or communion, commemorates the death of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, the bread representing His body that was broken for us, and the fruit of the vine representing His blood that was shed for us. The bread and grape juice or wine is only a representation, a symbol of Christ body, and blood. There is no salvation in the Lord’s Supper or is there any saving power in the ceremony. The only requirement of taking part in the Lord’s Supper is that the person must be truly born again.

Here in this Scripture we see Paul give the reasons and the procedure for this ordinance. 1 Corinthians 11:23 - 34 “When ye come together therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord’s supper. For in eating every one taketh before other his own supper: and one is hungry, and another is drunken. What? Have ye not houses to eat and to drink in? Or despise ye the church of God, and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? Shall I praise you in this? I praise you not. For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: and when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in
remembrance of me. For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come. For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come. Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthy, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthy, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world. Wherefore, my brethren, when ye come together to eat, tarry one for another. And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that ye come not together unto condemnation. And the rest will I set in order when I come.”

We have seen in these verses that a person must be saved in order to take part in the Lord's Supper and to examine himself and confess any sin that he has committed against the Lord. Now we need to take a look at what Christ went through for us.

Isaiah 53:1 - 12 “Who hath believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the LORD revealed? For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him. He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not. Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all. He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken. And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth. Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities. Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.”

There are three doctrines in the Lord Supper. 1. The blood of Christ: Romans 3:25 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.” Hebrews 9:22 “And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.” Colossians 1:14 “In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” Matthew 26:28 “For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.” Ephesians 1:7 “In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;” 2. The Resurrection of Christ: We remember that He died and shed His blood on the cross in our place for the forgiveness of sins and now we remember that He was buried but arose bodily from the grave to give us eternal life. Christ gave us victory over death and the grave. Praise Him! The proof of His resurrection is in the Scriptures. Acts 1:30 - 32 “Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of
Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses.”

3. **Christ is coming back.** 1 Corinthians 11:26 “For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew the Lord's death till he come.” 1 Corinthians 15:23 “But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.” Acts 1:11 “Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.”

I do believe that body of Christ (church) should at least have the Lord’s Supper once a month or at least once every two months and then on special occasions for example like Christmas, Easter and Thanksgiving. This is just my preference in remembering the Lord’s redemptive work He did for us.

I hope you have received Christ so you can take part in the Lord's Supper. We now see that Christ instituted the Lord's Supper, and read that we need to judge ourselves and to look for His coming back soon.
CHAPTER 15

PRAYER

I would like to reiterate that this is not an exhaustive study of the Doctrine of Prayer. There have been a volume of books written about prayer, but this study is just to help you acquire a foundation of prayer and give you encouragement to pray. While I was writing out this study of prayer a song came to mind that I enjoy immensely and would like to share it with you from the song book “Inspiring Hymns” the song is “Sweet Hour of Prayer” number 30. “Sweet hour of prayer! Sweet hour of prayer! That calls me from a world of care, And bids me at my Father’s throne, Make all my wants and wishes known. In seasons of distress and grief, My soul has often found relief, And oft escaped the tempters snare, By Thy return, sweet of hour of prayer.” “Sweet hour of prayer! Sweet hour of prayer! Thy wings shall my petition bear, To Him whose truth and faithfulness, Engage the waiting soul to bless. And since He bids me seek His face, Believe His Word and trust His grace, I’ll cast on Him my every care, And wait for Thee, sweet hour of prayer.”

Before we start the study of the Doctrine of Prayer it must be emphasized here that it is only through the Lord Jesus Christ that a person can approach God and commune with Him. This will be proven through God’s Word. John 14:13, 14 “And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.” John 16:23, 24 “And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, WHATSOEVER ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give it you. Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.” Romans 8:34 “Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.” Hebrews 7:25 “Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.” Hebrews 4:14 - 16 “Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.” Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared; Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered; And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him; Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec.” John 14:1 - 6 “Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me. In my Father’s house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also. And whither I go ye know, and the way ye know. Thomas saith unto him, Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way? Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” 1John 1:3 “That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.” 1John 2:1, 23 “My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: (but) he that acknowledgeth the Son
hath the Father also. 1 John 4:15 “Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God. 1 John 5:1, 9 - 15 “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him. If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son. He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God. And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.”

So my question is; have you received Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior? Have you been born again? You must receive Christ Jesus to have access to God. You must have God as your Father. The only way that God can be your Father is through the Lord Jesus Christ. Galatians 3:26 “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.” Romans 8:14 – 15 “For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.” Galatians 4:4 – 7 “But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law, To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying Abba, Father. Wherefore thou are no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.” So if you haven’t received Christ please go back to chapter 5 and read it over thoroughly.

I will be the first to admit that I have sinned in my prayer life. I do not pray as often as I should. But, I hope, that through this brief study, it will encourage us to pray more often.

Prayer is the spreading out of our helplessness and that of others, and our dependency on God our Father in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ, before the loving eyes of a Father who knows and understands and cares for us and answers in His time. It must be emphasized that God does according to His will in His time when it comes to answering prayer. Prayer is the breathing and panting of the spirit after God. Prayer is simply talking to the Lord.

The word pray is found 174 times in the New Testament. The word prayer is found 53 times in the New Testament. It stresses the sense of need. It can mean petition, supplication, or requesting. In any rate the Lord Jesus showed us that prayer was important. Matthew 14:23 “And when he had sent the multitudes away, he went up into a mountain apart to pray: and when the evening was come, he was there alone.”

There are four basic parts to prayer. The first part is that we have Adoration towards God. This is praise and worship of the soul to God. Revelation 4:11 “Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.” Psalms 95:6 “O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the LORD our maker.” The second part is Confession which is repentance from every know sin. Psalms 32:5 “I acknowledged my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.” The third part is Thanksgiving is being thankful for anything and everything. Philippians 4:6 “Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.” And the last part is Supplication, which is requests, desires, intercession, and petitions. 1 Timothy 2:1 “I exhort therefore, that,
first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men.”

Philippians 4:6 “Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.” We should all remember to make it our habit to follow this outline of prayer. So we need to worship our Father and glorify Him and tell Him how great and wonderful He is. And then we need to confess all of our sins and then thank the Lord for prayer and for all what He has done for us. And then make all the requests and desires we have to Him.

How should we pray? We should pray without hypocrisy. We should be living a life that is pleasing to the Lord. We should not judge others and think we are so much better than others. Luke 18:10 - 14 “Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican. The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess. And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner. I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.”

We should pray Privately. Matthew 6:6 “But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.”

We should pray Specifically, Persistently and in Faith. Psalms 37:4 - 5 “Delight thyself also in the LORD; and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart. Commit thy way unto the LORD; trust also in him; and he shall bring it to pass.” Always pray in the name of Jesus. John 15:16 “Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and ye’re your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name he may give it you.” John 16:23 - 24, 26 “And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you. Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, He will give it you. Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full. At that day ye shall ask in my name: and I say not unto you, that I will pray the Father for you.”

When should we pray? We should pray as often as our hearts convict us to pray and when the Holy Spirit speaks to our hearts to pray. I have prayed in my vehicle as I was driving down the road. I have prayed showering, working, and walking. We can pray morning, noon and night. Pray regularly. Psalms 55:17 “Evening, and morning, and noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice.” Daniel 6:10 - 11 “Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime. Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his God.” 1Thessalonians 5:17, 18 “Pray without ceasing. In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.” I believe that we should pray and give thanks before each meal we eat.

I have found that it is good to read God's Word first. Looking down at God's Word will fill our hearts with power and see what promises He has given us. The Holy Spirit will speak to our hearts through His Word and show us what we need to pray for and who for.

Who should we pray for? We should pray for the sick, those in need, saved, unsaved, missionaries, friends, family, enemies, and yourself. James 5:15, 16 “And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him. Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much. Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on
the earth by the space of three years and six months. And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit. Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; Let him know, that he which converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall save a soul from death, and shall hide a multitude of sins.” Ephesians 6:18 “Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.” (“Saints” are born again Christians). 1 Timothy 2:1 - 4 “I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men: For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.” Romans 10:1 “Brethren, my heart’s desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved.” Colossians 4:2, 3 “Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving; Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds.” Mark 11:24, 25 “Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them. And when ye stand praying, forgive, if ye have ought against any: that your Father also which is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses.” Matthew 5:44 “But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you.”

The Holy Spirit helps in prayer. He comes to our aid and prays for us. Praise God for His Holy Spirit. Romans 8:26 “Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.” Sometimes we just do not know what to pray for because we are hurting so much we just can't utter a word or how to pray for some particular thing. The Holy Spirit is there for us to help.

There are many good books written about prayer which go much more in depth than this brief chapter that I gave you. But maybe this will get us started in praying more often in having a closer walk with our Father God and Savior Jesus Christ. 1 Peter 3:12 “For the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous, and his ears are open unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord is against them that do evil.” 1 Peter 4:7 “But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.”

In the hymn book “Inspiring Hymns” number 384 by Joseph Scriven is the song “What a Friend.” “What a Friend we have in Jesus, All our sins and griefs to bear! What a privilege to carry, everything to God in prayer! O what peace we often forfeit, O what needless pain we bear, All because we do not carry everything to God in prayer.”
There were a host’s of angels who fell with Satan. They are presently functioning in Satan’s counterfeit World System as rulers of darkness, to be resisted by the believer through the armor provided by God. I believe that Satan, the "god of this age” and "the prince of the power of the air," once knew heavenly honors. I believe he is the originator of sin because of pride and ambition to be above the Almighty God, he fell and is currently the power of all darkness and evil. He is destined for final defeat at the hand of God’s Son, and for the judgment of eternal hell, a place prepared for him and his angels.

Many people today believe that Satan is a myth, fable, a figure of imagination, or a fiction character. Some believe it is superstitious to believe in him and foolishness. As in all cases of the issues of life one must seek to find out the truth from the Bible, which is the source of all truth. Is Satan real? My belief is that Satan exists and is a real personal being. How do I know that? The Bible tells me so. Job 1:6 “And the Lord said unto Satan, whence cometh thou? And then Satan answered the Lord and said, from going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.”

This is the whole issue. Man must seek truth from the Bible to see if something is true or false. The whole human race is in a fallen estate; all of mankind are sinners and do not want to seek the truth from God. Romans 3:4 “God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar; as it is written, that thou mightest be judged in thy sayings, and mightest overcome when thou are judged.” We need to trust what God says and be careful what man teaches and proclaims.

The word Satan means adversary, accuser, and a slander. From the English language Satan is also called devil, but it should be applied to Satan as a proper name. Demon is frequently, translated devil; it should always be translated demon. There is one Devil; there are many demons. Devil is mentioned 122 times in the Bible. Satan is mentioned in the Bible 57 times. There are two books of the Bible that explain the origin of Satan. Isaiah 14:12 - 17 “How are thou fallen from heaven. O Lucifer, son of the morning! How art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations? For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds: I will be like the most High.” Ezekiel 28:12 - 17 “Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, thus saith the Lord God; thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect beauty. Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of the taberts and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou was created. Thou art the anointed cherub that coverth; and I set thee so: thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee. By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profaned out of the mountain of God: and I will destroy thee. O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee.” Satan's sin was his pride. He said five times, “I will.” He set his will against God’s will. His sin was of idolatry, which comes from pride, and it began in Lucifer's heart, which led to self love and self
will, which led to rebellion against God his creator.

Satan was originally created as an angel named Lucifer. The word angel means messenger. God created all angels. Colossians 1:16a “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible.” Lucifer means light bearing. He was the most beautiful, wisest, most powerful angel that God created. Lucifer was a cherubim angel; he was in charge of the cherubim angels. Cherubim were a protector or a shadowing. They stood in the presence of God.

Satan has a kingdom now, the kingdom of darkness, and his demons are there with him also (Jude 1:6 “And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation.”) (2 Peter 2:4 “For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.”) that fell with him and oppose God night and day. His kingdom is the kingdom of darkness and he is the ruler of it. The kingdom of darkness is all lies, wickedness, and hate and everything that opposes God.

Ephesians 6:12 “For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.” Revelation 16:10 “And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness.” God’s kingdom is the Kingdom of Light. The Kingdom of Light is truth, righteousness, and love. Who is in the kingdom of darkness? Satan is, along with his fallen angels, and unsaved people. Who are the unsaved people? Matthew 13:38 “The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but tares are the children of the wicked one.” These are people who have not accepted Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior.

How do we recognize Satan? **He is a tempter.** Please read Luke 4:1 – 13 “And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness, Being forty days tempted of the devil. And in those days he did eat nothing: and when they were ended, he afterward hungered. And the devil said unto him, If thou be the Son of God, command this stone that it be made bread. And Jesus answered him, saying, It is written, That man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God. And the devil, taking him up into an high mountain, shewed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it. If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine. And Jesus answered and said unto him, Get thee behind me, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. And he brought him to Jerusalem, and set him on a pinnacle of the temple, and said unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down from hence: For it is written, He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee: And in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. And Jesus answering said unto him, It is said, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. And when the devil had ended all the temptation, he departed from him for a season.” 1Thessalonians 3:5 “the tempter have tempted you.” **He is a liar and a murderer.** John 8:44 “You are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father you will as. He was a murder from the beginning, and you abide not in the truth, because there is no truth in him (Satan). When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is liar, and the father of it.” **He is the enemy and a devourer.** 1 Peter 5: 8 “Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.” **He is a deceiver.** Revelation 12:9 “And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world.” **He is a counterfeiter.** 2 Corinthians 11:14 “And don’t marvel: For Satan himself is transformed into a an angel of light.” **He is a blinder of minds.** 2 Corinthians 4: 4 “In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not.” Satan also miss-leads, tricks, hinders, and troubles the whole human race, and suppresses the word of God.
Satan is the accuser. Revelation 12:10 “for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.”

Satan's main objective is to keep people from receiving the Lord Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior, and to make the saved ones to doubt divine facts, he will resort to lying signs, feelings and experiences in his attempts to shake us from our faith in Gods Word. Ephesians 4:27 “Neither give place to the devil.”

Satan in Job 1:6 - 11 and in 2:1 - 5. Satan comes to God with his demons and accuses Job to God. We see Satan in Genesis 3:1 - 15 in the Garden of Eden, when he tempted Eve and deceived her. We see Satan in Luke 4: 3 - 13 when he tempted the Son of God the Lord Jesus Christ. He tried to tempt Jesus into committing the same sin he committed which was idolatry; which is pride. Please read the previous passages that I have mentioned in the book of Job, Genesis and in Luke.

God will finally deal with Satan and his followers. Revelation 20:10 “And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night forever and ever.”

Satan is a real being and he is seeking whom he may deceive. Ephesians 2:2 “Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.” Satan is the prince of the power of the air. The Jews believed that there was a Devil. They called him Beelzebub. Matthew 12:24 “But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, this fellow casts out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils.” Peter believed there was a devil. Acts 5:3 “But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart.”

Many people in this world today think of Satan as just a figurative object. Satan has deceived them by thinking this way. He did exactly what he wanted them to do, by not thinking of him as a literal person. He has blinded so many minds.

Many in the human race think that it is genetic or social problems that is the cause of bad behavior in people. This is not true. It is the fallen nature of man. It is a sin problem and Satan is there to tempt and to deceive people in doing the evil deeds that are done. Ephesians 2:2 “Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.” Acts 26:18 “To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God.” No matter if you believe it or not, it does not change God's Word, because Gods word is true. Satan is a real person!

What is Satan's future? After the seven year tribulation period the Lord Jesus Christ will come back, and this is what is going to happen. Revelation 19:19 “And I saw the beast (The anti-christ) and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.” Revelation 20:2, 3 “And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.” Revelation 20:7 - 10 “And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, and shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog; to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of
the sea. And they went up on the breath of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night forever and forever.” Satan will finally be destroyed according to God’s plan.

How can the Christian have victory over Satan? Christ has given us the victory through his shed blood, death, and resurrection. Colossians 2:15 “And having defeated principalities, and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over it.” Christ defeated the power of darkness. What Christ did, he did as our representative. 1 John 3: 8b “For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.” Colossians 1:12, 13 “Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us, meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son.” Hebrews 2:14 “That through death he (Christ) might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil.” Hebrews 2:18 “For in that he (Christ) himself hath suffered, being tempted, he is able to help them that are tempted.” Corinthians 10:13 “There hath no temptation taken you but such as common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that you are able, but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that you may be able to bear it.” Luke 22:40 “And when he was at the place, he said unto them, pray that you enter not into temptation.” James 4:7 “Submit yourselves therefore to God, resist the devil and he will flee from you.” 2 Peter 2:9 “The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations.” Luke 22:46 “And he said unto them, why sleep you, rise and pray, lest you enter into temptation.” In Luke 4: 3 - 13 Jesus Christ used the Word of God to fight Satan. Three times He was tempted and He used the Word of God all three times. He said, “As it is written.” Christ said, Luke 4:4 “It is written, that man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.”

Prayer and God’s Word are the weapons we use to fight Satan’s temptations. Hebrews 4:12 “For the word of God, is quick, and powerful, and shaper even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.” God’s word is powerful in fighting Satan. The Bible makes it clear that we need to be prepared in fighting Satan. Ephesians 6: 11 - 18 “Put on the whole armor of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities against powers, against the rulers of darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armor of God; that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, having done all to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having the breastplate of righteousness; and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.”

Christians also can fight Satan knowing they are God’s over comers. Revelation 12: 11 “And they overcame him (Satan) by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto death.” Let’s look at these three great truths in this verse. 1. The blood of the Lamb: 1 John 1:7 “the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.” 2. By the word of their testimony: That through faith in God’s Word we can declare all the facts of what Christ did for us. John 1: 12 “But as many as receive Him, to them gave he the power to become the sons of God, even to them that believeth on his name.” Galatians 3:26 “For ye are all children of God, by faith in Jesus Christ.” I am God’s child. Because of Christ’s death, burial, and resurrection we can have victory. 1 Corinthians 15:57 “But thanks be unto
**God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.**” 3. **They love not their lives:** Galatians 2:20 “I am crucified with Christ, nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.” Christians need to count all things but lost, setting those things behind us that occupy our time for Christ, we need to occupy ourselves with what we should be doing for Christ setting the cross before for us and keeping our eyes on Christ. Christians need to claim these verses by faith. We have victory over Satan, by claiming all the truths, by faith in God’s Word.

So as you see God says Satan is a real person, we need to take him very serious and watch out for him because he will attack us. Christians know Satan's future, he will be destroyed, and we need God’s word, and prayer to fight him. So let’s pray for one another so will be able to stand against him. And let’s pray for them that have not yet accepted Jesus Christ as their own personal Savior. Satan is deceiving them in many different ways not to accept Jesus Christ. Satan is even deceiving priests, pastors, preachers, churches; religious people believing that good works will save them. Satan has deceived many people in believing that not all that don't hear the gospel are going to heaven. Oh how sad. The Gospel needs to be preached to the whole human race. All are lost and need to be saved. Let us all take heed and lead others to Christ.
I believe the word _hell_ is a loosely used common word by many today without really thinking about the seriousness of it. And it is seldom preached in churches anymore!! Hell is a real place and many shall go there in. Many today think _hell_ is fiction, a fable, just like they think about the Devil! I have heard some joke that if they are going to hell they will have a big party with their friends. Oh my word!!! They do not know what they are saying!! Many people do not believe in a _hell_. There are religions that do not believe in _hell_. There are churches that teach that _hell_ is a figurative term and that God would not send anyone to _hell_. _Oh Please!!! You that are reading this please take this serious. There is a hell and you will learn the truth about it through God’s Word._

_Hell_ is a term that in common usage designates the place of a future tormented conscious existence of the unsaved. Let us see the meaning of hell from God’s Word. We always have to go to God’s Word just like we have with all the other issues that I have talked about in this book. We always have searched the scriptures to see what the Bible says in each issue. It is the final authority of the Scriptures that the answers rest on. _Hell_ is a fact of reality when we start reading the Bible and see that the Lord Jesus Christ the righteous one died for a very important reason. He died for the human race so that they could escape the penalty of sin which is death (hell). What is death (hell)? The word death in the Greek is _thanatos_ it has two meanings. **A.** It is physical death, the spirit of man separated from the body. **B.** It is spiritual death, the spirit of man separated from God. _Death_ is the opposite of life. It never denotes non-existence. **Spiritual life is conscious existence in communion with God. Spiritual death (hell) is a tormented conscious existence in separation from God.** Both of these are the punishment, penalty of sin. Christ taught about this place in many places in the Scriptures. He taught about perish and condemnation also. There had to be a reason for Jesus Christ telling us these things!

Over and over the word _hell, perish, and condemned_ is repetitiously seen in the Scriptures. The word _perish_ is found in Scriptures 40 times. What do you think the word perish means? It means destroy, depart, destruction, die, decay, so as you see it is a very negative word. What about the word _condemned_? The word _condemn_ is found 21 times in the Scriptures. The word condemned means to be found guilty and sentenced to punishment. The word _hell_ is found 23 times in the Bible, but there are 162 references of a place of eternal punishment and Jesus Christ spoke of 70 of them. These 3 words _hell, perish and condemned_ must be taken seriously and to take them literally because Jesus Christ would not of taught about them if it wasn’t a fact of veracity.

Let’s read some of these verses. First we will read some with perish or condemned or condemnation. _John 3:15 - 18_ “That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only
begotten Son of God.” 1 Corinthians 1:18 “For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.” John 10:28 “And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.” Luke 13:3 “I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.” These verses give a clear message about the words perish and condemned. One must believe on the Lord Jesus Christ from being condemned and perishing. What are we condemned and perished to???. HELL!!! But God loves everyone He surely wouldn't send people who He loves to hell. No, He doesn't send anyone to hell!! People send their own selves to hell, because they made their own decision to reject Christ and choose hell. God has given all people the chance to be saved from hell. God has given everyone a free will to make choices. Read John 3:15 - 18 again! 2 Peter 3:9 “The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is long-suffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.”

In my research on hell over the internet I found some interesting and fascinating articles about hell. I will share with you the 2 articles I found. The first article is entitled Beyond Death's Door a book written by Dr. Maurice Rawlings. Dr. Rawlings, a specialist in Internal Medicine and Cardiovascular Disease saw many people who had been clinically dead. Dr. Rawlings, a devout atheist, “considered all religions hocus-pocus and death nothing more than a painless extinction.” But something happened in 1977 that brought a dramatic change in the life of Dr. Rawlings! He was resuscitating a man, terrified and screaming descending down into the flames of hell: This is his account of what happen. “Each time he regained heartbeat and respiration, the patient screamed, "I'm in hell" He was terrified and pleaded with me to help him. I was scared to death. Then I noticed a genuinely alarmed look on his face. He had a terrified look worse than the expression seen in death! This patient had a grotesque grimace expressing sheer horror! His pupils were dilated, and he was perspiring and trembling he looked as if his hair was on end. Then still another strange thing happened. He said "Don't you understand? I'm in hell! Don't let me go back to hell" the man was serious, and it finally occurred to me that he was indeed in trouble. He was in a panic like I had never seen before.” (Maurice Rawlings, Beyond Death's Door, (Thomas Nelson Inc., 1979) p. 3). (16) Here is the second article that I found from a well-respected newspaper in Finland. The headlines read “RESEARCHERS RECORD SCREAMS OF THE DAMNED.” As the article continues, “As a communist I don't believe in heaven or the Bible but as a scientist I now believe in hell,” said Dr. Azzacove. “Needless to say we were shocked to make such a discovery. But we know what we saw and we know what we heard. And we are absolutely convinced that we drilled through the gates of hell!” Dr. Azzacove continued, "the drill suddenly began to rotate wildly, indicating that we had reached a large empty pocket or cavern. Temperature sensors showed a dramatic increase in heat to 2,000 degrees Fahrenheit. We lowered a microphone, designed to detect the sounds of plate movements down the shaft. But instead of plate movements we heard a human voice screaming in pain! At first we thought the sound was coming from our own equipment. But when we made adjustments our worst suspicions were confirmed. The screams weren't those of a single human, they were the screams of millions of humans!” (17)

Do not think this article came from one of those far out magazines in the grocery line. This article has been circulating for sometime now and it has been confirmed by others.

We will now look at some Scripture that mentions the word hell. God did not create hell for the human race but for Satan and his angels that sinned. God has made away for us to escape through Jesus Christ. But if there is someone that rejects Him they will go into a lake of fire, a place called hell. 2 Peter 2:4 “For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down
to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.” Mark 9:43 – 48 “And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. And if thy foot offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out: it is better for thee to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye, than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire: Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.”

Three times Christ mentions a fire that is not quenched!

The Greek word gehenna for the Hebrew word hinnom is hell in the New Testament. The Valley of Hinnom (the Hebrew word for hell) is a deep, narrow glen to the south of Jerusalem where the Jews offered their children to Molech. The Old Testament renders “valley of the son of Hinnom,” in latter times it served as a receptacle of all sorts of putrefying matter and all that defiled the holy city. It constantly burned with all kinds of rubbish. It literally looked like a lake of fire in this place. This became the representative or image of the place of everlasting punishment. Revelation 19:20 “And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.” Revelation 20:10, 14, 15 “And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.” In hell there will be tormented conscious existence separated from God forever, forever and forever.

The Greek word hades means “unseen” which describes the intermediate state of the wicked previous to the judgment and the eternal state. This is not a parable. Or is it a representation or image of purgatory in these next verses. Luke 16:22 - 28 “And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivethst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence. Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house: For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment.” Some say this is a parable, an illustration. Then if it is, hell has to be worse than the illustration, because no illustration fully illustrates what it is trying to illustrate. Notice that the rich man wanted someone to go and to tell his brothers that there was a real place of torment and wanted them to be saved from it. This rich man is still in Hades and is a representative case, and describes the unjudged condition in the intermediate state of the wicked. If you notice his spirit, he is alive, fully conscious, in exercise of his mental faculties, and also tormented. Hades is a place of torment. On that Great White Throne judgment day Hades will surrender all the unsaved, those who rejected Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior and will be thrown into Hell (Gehenna ) forever and forever. Hebrews 2:3 “How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him.”
The Hebrew word *sheol* is the equivalent of *hades*. There is no clue to the origin of the word and must seek for its meaning in the Scriptures. In *Psalms 9:17* “The wicked shall be turned into hell, and all the nations that forget God.” Sheol can only mean the abode of the wicked, as distinguished from and opposed to the righteous.

Matthew 25:46 “And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.” Mark 3:29 “But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost hath never forgiveness, but is in danger of eternal damnation.” This verse is condemning those who reject the Lord Jesus Christ. There is a punishment, damnation, condemnation, to all those who reject the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior. **The Bible warns of the eternity and permanence of hell!**

John 3:36 “He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.”

Scientist and Bible teacher, Henry Morris also agrees the Bible plainly teaches that hell is in this earth. Henry is quoted saying, “So far as we can tell from Scripture, the present hell, is somewhere in the heart of the earth itself.”(17) It is also called “the pit” *Isaiah 14:9, 15* “Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.” *Ezekiel 32:18 - 21* “Son of man, wail for the multitude of Egypt, and cast them down, even her, and the daughters of the famous nations, unto the nether parts of the earth, with them that go down into the pit. Whom dost thou pass in beauty? go down, and be thou laid with the uncircumcised. They shall fall in the midst of them that are slain by the sword: she is delivered to the sword: draw her and all her multitudes. The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell with them that help him: they are gone down, they lie uncircumcised, slain by the sword. Hell is also called the abyss in *Revelation 9:2* “And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the (abyss) bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.” The writers certainly believed hell to be real and geographically “beneath” the earth's surface. To say this is not scientific is to assume science knows much more about the earth's interior than is actually the case. **The great “pit” [hell] would only need to be about 100 miles or less in diameter to contain, with much room to spare, all the forty billion or so people who have ever lived, assuming their 'spiritual' bodies are the same size as their physical bodies.**

The Bible says in *Revelation 21:8* “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoredoms, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.” Listen to me very carefully! The Lord Jesus Christ paid for these sins that you just read about in *Revelation 21:8*. He paid for them by shedding His blood on the cross, dying in our place, and arose from the dead to prove that He is the Living Savior. He was our substitute! He did it for us! Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and be saved from hell. Sin cannot enter into heaven you must be found righteous before God to enter heaven. How can you be righteous when you are a sinner? The Lord Jesus Christ can make you Holy, Righteous before God. Read this verse. *2 Corinthians 5:21* “For He hat made Him (Jesus Christ) to be sin for us, who knew no sin: that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him (Jesus Christ.)” *Romans 10:4* “For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone that believeth.”

I do hope and pray that you have accepted Christ to escape the wrath of God upon sin. Remember, He loves you and wants you to be saved from hell a real tormented conscious existence separated from Him forever.
CHAPTER 18

ANGELS

There are many people who have been deceived in watching television and movies about angels. And as entertaining these programs and movies might be, some of them are deceiving and false. Yes, they are wholesome programs but we need to be careful and not let them influence our belief in accordance with God's Word. I have heard, read and seen some extraordinary stories that do not coincide with God's Word. We have to go to God's word and see the facts about angels and not take someone's story or stories about experiences that they have had with angels. We must always be aware of the two kinds of angelic activity in the world of good and evil. Be very careful of the books you read or the seminars you attend on this issue. While there are a number of wonderful Christian books available, there are numerous publications filled with demonic deception of the ugliest kind! The Scriptures tell us to test the spirits to see if they are from God. Go to any search engines on the internet and you will find many "angel" sites listed on the internet. Please be very careful when visiting these sites. Remember the adversary. He is lying in wait to deceive you. Once you are deceived he has an open door into your life. His goal is to steal, kill, and destroy. You may think the study of angels is a harmless pursuit. It can be extremely dangerous, so please be very careful. If you are born again Christian pray to God, the Father, in Jesus' name and ask His direction, ask for His protection and if you want His angels to surround you, talk to Him about it. Remember this, when you start to talk to angels, you may very well be talking to demons in disguise. Watch out for stories from others and be careful not to believe it until you search out the story and compare it with God's Word. In a Reader's Digest article “Angel’s Why We Believe” a survey was taken to show that public belief in angels is as strong as ever in the country. A Harris Interactive poll last November found that nearly 7 in 10 Americans believe in angels. Gallup reported in 2004 that 78 percent believe, compared to 72 % in 1994 and 54 % in 1978. What I have found in a poll taken by the Religious Tolerance Org. is that 68 % believe Satan is real. This means that more believe in Angel’s existence than Satan’s existence.

By definition, the word, angel in the Greek “aggelos” means messenger, to bring a message, announce, proclaim it is used of God, of men, and of an order of created beings whose chief attributes are strength and wisdom. 2Samuel 14:20 “To fetch about this form of speech hath thy servant Joab done this thing: and my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth.” Psalms 103:20 “Bless the LORD, ye his angel’s, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.” Psalms 104:4 “Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire:”

From the definition I just gave you and the Scriptures that talk of angels, we can get an idea of their work on earth on behalf of mankind. From the following Biblical references we find they do a variety of things, rescue, guard, keep, protect, bring us messages from God, fight our battles, and carry out God's Desires. The word angel is mentioned in the Old Testament 242 times and 69 times in the New Testament. The
statement in Scriptures “angel of the Lord” is mentioned 68 times. In the Old Testament the expression “angel of the Lord” or “angel of God” must be remembered that it could mean and imply the presence of Deity in the angelic form. For instance when read in Exodus, Judges, and Numbers we will see this meaning. **Exodus 3:2 - 6** “And the angel of the LORD appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush was not consumed. And Moses said, I will now turn aside, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt. And when the **LORD** saw that he turned aside to see, **God** called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses. And he said, Here am I. And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground. Moreover he said, I **am the God** of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon God.” As you read on you understand that it is the Lord Himself that spoke to Moses. **Judges 13:1 - 20** “And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the **LORD**; and the **LORD** delivered them into the hand of the Philistines forty years. And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah; and his wife was barren, and bare not. And the angel of the **LORD** appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, Behold now, thou art barren, and bearest not. But thou shalt conceive, and bear a son. Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink not wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean thing: For, lo, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and no rasor shall come on his head: for the child shall be a Nazarite unto **God** from the womb: and he shall begin to deliver Israel out of the hand of the Philistines. Then the woman came and told her husband, saying, A man of God came unto me, and his countenance was like the countenance of an angel of God, very terrible: but I asked him not whence he was, neither told he me his name: But he said unto me, Behold, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and now drink no wine nor strong drink, neither eat any unclean thing: for the child shall be a Nazarite to **God** from the womb to the day of his death. Then Manoah intreated the **LORD**, and said, O my **LORD**, let the man of God which thou didst send come again unto us, and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born. And **God** hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of **God** came again unto the woman as she sat in the field: But he said unto me, Behold, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and now drink no wine nor strong drink, neither eat any unclean thing: for the child shall be a Nazarite unto **God** from the womb to the day of his death. Then Manoah intreated the **LORD**, and said, O my **LORD**, let the man of God which thou didst send come again unto us, and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born. And **God** hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of **God** came again unto the woman as she sat in the field: but Manoah her husband was not with her. And the woman made haste, and ran, and shewed her husband, and said unto him, Behold, the man hath appeared unto me, that came unto me the other day. And Manoah arose, and went after his wife, and came to the man, and said unto him, Art thou the man that spakest unto the woman?: And he said, I am. And Manoah said, Now let thy words come to pass. How shall we order the child, and how shall we do unto him?: And the angel of the **LORD** said unto Manoah, Of all that I said unto the woman let her observe. She may not eat of any thing that cometh of the vine, neither let her drink wine or strong drink, nor eat any unclean thing: all that I commanded her let her observe. And Manoah said unto the angel of the **LORD**, I pray thee, let us detain thee, until we shall have made ready a kid for thee. And the angel of the **LORD** said unto Manoah, Though thou detain me, I will not eat of thy bread: and if thou wilt offer a burnt offering, thou must offer it unto the **LORD**. For Manoah knew not that he was an angel of the **LORD**. And Manoah said unto the angel of the **LORD**, What is thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do thee honour?: And the angel of the **LORD** said unto him, Why askest thou thus after my name, seeing it is secret?: So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering, and offered it upon a rock unto the **LORD**: and the angel did wondrously; and Manoah and his wife looked on. For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the **LORD** ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on it, and fell on their faces to the ground. But the angel of the **LORD** did no more appear to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was an angel of the **LORD**.” **Numbers 22:21 - 35** “And
Balaam rose up in the morning, and saddled his ass, and went with the princes of Moab. And God's anger was kindled because he went: and the angel of the LORD stood in the way for an adversary against him. Now he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants were with him. And the ass saw the angel of the LORD standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way. But the angel of the LORD stood in a path of the vineyards, a wall being on this side, and a wall on that side. And when the ass saw the angel of the LORD, she thrust herself unto the wall, and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall: and he smote her again.

The LORD opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, What have I done unto thee, that thou hast smitten me these three times? And Balaam said unto the ass, Because thou hast mocked me: I would there were a sword in mine hand, for now would I kill thee. And the ass said unto Balaam, Am not I thine ass, upon which thou hast ridden ever since I was thine unto this day? was I ever wont to do so unto thee? And he said, Nay. Then the LORD opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of the LORD standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and he bowed down his head, and fell flat on his face. And the angel of the LORD said unto him, Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass these three times? behold, I went out to withstand thee, because thy way is perverse before me: and the ass saw me, and turned from me these three times: unless she had turned from me, surely now also I had slain thee, and saved her alive. And Balaam said unto the angel of the LORD, I have sinned; for I knew not that thou stoodest in the way against me: now therefore, if it displease thee, I will get me back again. And the angel of the LORD said unto Balaam, Go with the men: but only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak.

Now here is a verse that mentions the phrase “angel of Lord” but does not imply Deity because the “angel of Lord” identifies himself. Luke 1:11, 19, “And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense. And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to shew thee these glad tidings.” There are more these verses in God’s Word so you will have to search the Word of God for these for yourselves and see the truth in them.

KNOW THE DIFFERENCE OF GOOD AND BAD ANGELS

All angels were created as holy angels, but about a third of them rebelled against God and fell from their sinless position. Revelation 12:9 “And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.” Satan, the leader of the “bad” or fallen angels, is a liar, a murderer, and a thief. Matthew 25:42 “Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:” Revelation 20:10 “And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.” John 10:10 “The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am (Christ) come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.” The Devil hates God and he passionately hates God’s people. The Bible tells us that he prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour. 1 Peter 5:8 “Be sober, be vigilant; because your
adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.” We need to remember that Satan and all the demons are supernaturally intelligent and Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. 2 Corinthians 11:14 “And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.” Masquerading as a holy angel, Satan and his demons are behind the current angel craze in our culture. Under the covert operation of the master deceiver, America is experiencing a wave of angel-mania! Why do I say this? Because the end is near and the Devil wants to deceive as many as possible from receiving the Lord Jesus Christ as their Lord and Savior. He wants to distract them from the truth. An angel from God will not give you instruction or guidance that deviates from what God has already said in His Word. Galatians 1:8 “But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.” When an angel begins to tell you things that changes God's Word, you know you are not speaking with a holy angel from God but a demon from hell. Satan misquoted the Scripture to Jesus. He is still disguising himself as an “angel of light” to deceive people. 2 Corinthians 11:14 “And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.” 1 Timothy 4:1, 2 “Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron.” Ephesians 6:12 “For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.” I have read about people that have said that they had an angel appear unto them and told them things that had been contrary to God's Word, but they believed the lie.

I do believe in the existence of angels who were created by God to bring Him honor and glory. In God's Word it plainly explains to us the whole purpose of angels on earth and in heaven. They are spiritual beings sent by God to minister to those who will inherit salvation. That means they are here for everyone on earth, because salvation is for everyone. God is so intent upon the salvation of mankind he even sends angelic beings to work to that end! To that end, they protect, defend, instruct and guide us under God’s direct order. But, we must remember that angels do not take the place of the Holy Spirit. This cannot be emphasized enough. We need to refer back to Chapter 4 “The Trinity,” “The Holy Spirit is God” to see the role of the Holy Spirit from the Word of God in a born again believer's life. It is a SERIOUS MISTAKE if one puts their trust in angels for their lives and not the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit takes preeminence over angels. 1 Corinthians 2:4 - 14 “And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power: But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” John 14:16, 26 “And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.” After we have come to accept Christ as our own personal Savior, the Spirit of God is sent into our hearts and becomes our source of power, wisdom and strength and the one we depend on in our lives. We do not want to put to much emphasis on angles in the Christian life but to stay
How many angels are there? Daniel 7:10 “A fiery stream issued and came forth from before Him. A thousand thousands ministered to Him; Ten thousand times ten thousand stood before Him.” Revelation 5:11 - 12 “And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.” Hebrews 12:22 “But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels.”

Angels are spirits and minister to us. Hebrews 1:13 - 14 “But to what angel has He ever said, ’Sit at my right hand, till I make them enemies a stool for thy feet? Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to serve, for the sake of those who are to obtain salvation?’” Angels are spirits, they do not have material bodies as men have, they are either human in form, or they can assume the human form when necessary. Luke 24:4 - 7 “And came to pass, as they were much perplexed thereabout, behold, two men stood by them in shining garments: And as they were afraid, and bowed down their faces to the earth, they said unto them, (the angels spoke and gave a message). Why seek ye the living among the dead? He is not here, but is risen: remember how he spake unto you when he was yet in Galilee, Saying, The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.” Luke 24:23 “And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive.” Angels is also used of a guardian or representative. Psalm 91:11 - 12 “For He will give His angels charge of you, to guard you in all your ways. On their hands they will bear you up, lest you dash your foot against a stone.” Revelation 1:20 “The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.” Matthew 18:10 “Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.” Acts 12:15 “And they said unto her, Thou art mad. But she constantly affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his angel.” Angels are created beings and they are superior to humans. Hebrews 1:7 “And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.” Hebrews 2:7 “Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands.” 2 Kings 19:35 “And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.” Angels have a Heavenly home and do not know when the day of the Lord will be. Revelation 5:11 “And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;” Revelation 7:11 “And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God,” Matthew 24:36 “But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.” There is nothing written in Scripture that indicates angels are omniscient (all knowing). Angels belong to God. Luke 12:8 “Also I say unto you, Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of man also confess before the angels of God.” Angel relations with born again believers. They are ministering spirits sent forth to minister. Psalms 91:11, Daniel 6:22, Acts 12:7 – 10, Acts 5:17 - 21 “But the high priest rose up and all who were with him, that is, the party of the Sadducees, and filled with jealousy they arrested the apostles and put them in the common prison. But at night an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors and
brought them out and said, “Go and stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this Life.” And when they heard this, they entered the temple at daybreak and taught.” Psalm 34:7 “The angel of the LORD encamps around those who fear Him, and He delivers them.” Acts 8:26-29 “But an angel of the Lord said to Philip, “Rise and go toward the south to the road that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza.” This is a desert road. And he rose and went. And behold, an Ethiopian, a eunuch, a minister of the Candace, queen of the Ethiopians, in charge of all her treasure, had come to Jerusalem to worship and was returning; seated in his chariot, he was reading the prophet Isaiah. And the Spirit said to Philip, “Go up and join this chariot.” Angels deliver God's message. Luke 1:11 “And the angel answered him, ‘I am Gabriel, who stand in the presence of God; and I was sent to speak to you, and to bring you this good news.” Psalms 103:20 “Bless the LORD, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.” Angels give us warning of impending danger. Genesis 19:15 “When morning dawned, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Arise, take your wife and your two daughters who are here, lest you be consumed in the punishment of the city” Angels Will be Instrumental in the Last Day Judgment of God. Matthew 13:41-42 “The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.” It would be Satan’s great pleasure to take you there with him. Don’t allow it to happen! Today, believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and accept Him as your Savior. Trust Him to surround you with his holy angels as you live for Him day by day.

Let’s read a portion of Scripture that gave an example of angels caring out a mission that God gave them to do. Genesis 19:1-13 “And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat. But before they lay down, the men of the city, even the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter: And they called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where are the men which came in to thee this night? bring them out unto us, that we may know them. And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him, And said, I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly. Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do ye to them as is good in your eyes: only unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof. And they said, Stand back. And they said again, This one fellow came in to sojourn, and he will needs be a judge: now will we deal worse with thee, than with them. And they pressed sore upon the man, even Lot, and came near to break the door. But the men put forth their hand, and pulled Lot into the house to them, and shut to the door. And they smote the men that were at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great: so that they wearied themselves to find the door. And the men said unto Lot, Hast thou here any besides? son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever thou hast in the city, bring them out of this place: For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the LORD; and the LORD hath sent us to destroy it.” Notice that these angels had human form, ate, spoke just like men. They had super power, gave a warning, protected and gave a message.

There are many more examples in God’s Word in seeing His angels at work. Why don’t you search God’s word and know about the truth of His angels. So you see now that God has a purpose to send His angels. They are messengers to proclaim or announce or to aid.
Here are a few ways to identify good angels. A spirit from God always acknowledges that Jesus is the Christ who came to the world to die for our sin and redeem us from Satan's bondage. 1 John 4:1-6 “Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world. Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. They are of the world: therefore speak they of the world, and the world heareth them. We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error.” Galatians 1:8 “But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.”

An angel of God will always glorify God. Holy angels do not draw attention to themselves. They work quietly, most often behind the scenes, then, when the work is done, they leave. Revelation 7:11 “And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God.” An angel of God will not accept worship, but will tell you to worship God. Revelation 19:10 “And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.” Revelation 22:8-9 “And I saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. Then said he unto me, See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.”

An angel of God does not come when we recite some kind of mystical formula, but at the command of God. There are many books available with instructions on how to contact your angel. But the Bible gives neither permission nor precedent for contacting angels. God's angels do not answer when you call to them! They respond to the command of God. The angelic demonstrations you will receive are from demons, disguising themselves as Gods angels to people who don't know how to tell the difference. There is no evidence in Scriptures that Christians should pray to angels. Some “angel experts” instruct their followers to love their angels and call upon them for health, healing, prosperity, and guidance. God's angels, however, are His servants, and all this attention and emphasis and glory should go to God, not His servants. God says, Isaiah 42:8 “I am the LORD: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images.” Scripture makes no mention of loving angels or worshipping them either. However, it does tell us to love God and His word. It also tells us to love each other. Never angels!

In Matthew 26:53 Jesus said, “Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than 12 legions of angels?” (a legion is between 4,000 and 6,000, which means at least 72,000 angels.) My question to you is this. If Jesus found it necessary to pray the Father for angels to come to his aid, why do some people believe they can command the angels directly? Remember, when you start talking to angels, you end up dealing with demons.

In Hebrews 13:1, 2 “Let brotherly love continue. Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares.” You just don't ever know when you meet a stranger that it could be an angel. That is a very sobering thought that maybe sometime in my lifetime I could possibly come in contact with an angel of God.

What do Angels look like, and how do they act? To understand the differences in angelic beings, look around you. God likes variety, it seems. Everything He created is different in some way. Angels sometimes have wings, sometimes they are like fire. From reading many Scripture references, it appears that angels are not confined to any specific form or shape, but assume
various forms and appearances according to the nature of the work they are required to perform for God’s will. In many instances they behave and act just like we do. They sit, stand, look like women, look like men, talk, eat and sing. In other instances, the Bible describes them as being spirits, wind and fire. Take a look at the descriptive information in the Bible. They sit down. Judges 6:11 “And there came an angel of the Lord and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah.” They stand and fly. Isaiah 6:2 “Above it stood the seraphims: (seraphims are angelic creatures) each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.” They look like women and have wind in their wings. Zechariah 5:9 “Then lifted I up mine eyes, and looked, and behold there came out two women, and the wind was in their wings, for they had wings like the wings of a stork.” They look like men. There are many verses but here is one example. Genesis 18:2 “And he lifted up his eyes and looked, and lo three men stood by him.” As you read through the Word of God look for these instances and see the wonderful power of God in His creation of these spirit beings.

This was not an exhaustive study on Angels so you need to search the scriptures for yourself on issues that you are not sure of. When it comes to Angels be careful what they are saying about it and if it lines up with God’s Word. If you are to read any book on Angels, be sure to make a research on the author of the book. This cannot be emphasized enough. Remember that there are a lot of false teachers out there.
CHAPTER 19

GOD’S DELEGATED AUTHORITY

When God created the Universe, He established a principal to govern it. That principal is Authority. God Himself is the highest authority, then the archangels, then angels. When man was created he too was under God's authority. Authority means a right to rule a right to be obeyed. All authority belongs to God because He is the creator of all things. Revelation 4:11 “Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.” Hebrews 1:3 “Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.” Revelation 5:12 “Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.”

There are two basic principals in the world. The first principal is the Rebellion (disobedience) of the world, which is the principal of Satan and the ruler of it. The second principal is Obedience of God's children. Every person lives their lives by either one of these principals. Who rebelled against God’s Authority? Lucifer and his angels and man also did. Lucifer and his angels were once in subjection to God's authority, but they rebelled. The same was for Adam and Eve they too were subject to God's Authority and rebelled. Adam's rebellious nature was passed on to us. Ephesians 2:2 “Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.” Romans 1:18 - 32 “For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness; Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shewed it unto them. For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse: Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools. And changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things. Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen. For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompence of their error which was met. And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient; Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, malignity; whisperers, backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful: Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.”
What is the principal of Rebellion? Rebellion is I WILL HAVE MY OWN WAY! The attitude of the world is expressed in the Word of God. Romans 10:3 “For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.” Romans 1:18, 25 “For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness. Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.” The heart attitude of rebellion against God's authority expresses itself in lawlessness. God's word says that the world will become more and more lawless as we approach the end. 2 Timothy 3:13 “But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.” Romans 1:29 - 32 “Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers, backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful: Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.”

What is the principal of Obedience? Obedience is to uphold God's Authority. God's Word is His Authority. If you have truly accepted Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior then you are child of God. As a child of God you must live your life by the principal of obedience. In our unsaved condition we were rebellious and disobedient. But when God saved us He made it possible for us to live our new life by the principal of obedience. But does this mean we will always obey God's authority? No. Jesus Christ was the righteous one. He never sinned. 1 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.” He chose to live His life by the principal of obedience it did not come automatic to Him. And it doesn't for us either. Christ lives in all true believers. The Lord Jesus Christ the obedient one now lives in us if you have been born again. Galatians 2:20 “I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.” We have the power to obey God because He lives in us. But we must choose to do this! Romans 8:1-13 “There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God. But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness. But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you. Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.” The Holy Spirit can deliver us from the old sinful nature and produce righteousness. We must always remember that God created His angels and man to obey, worship, love, and glorify Him. It was God's purpose to have a race of people that would be obedient to Him and establish His authority on the earth and that all people would come to know God. God intended that through the Nation of Israel all people would come to know God. But Israel
disobeyed and rebelled. God allowed their Nation to be destroyed because they could not be corrected and continued their disobedience.

God created angels and many of them rebelled against Him. He created man and man rebelled. He chose the Nation of Israel to be His people but the people of Israel rebelled against Him. Then in fullness of time God sent His Son into the world. 1. He came to die for our sins. 2. He also came to re-establish the principal of obedience. John 6:38 “For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.” Jesus Christ is God. Before He came into the world He shared the same glory, and honor and authority as the Father. But when He came into this world, He gave up His place of glory and humbled himself as a man. Philippians 2:6, 7 “Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men;” Hebrews 2:16 “For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.” What kind of man was Jesus? He was totally obedient. He obeyed God always. 1 Corinthians 5:21 “For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.” Christ always submitted to the authority of God. The principal of His life was the principal of obedience. Jesus Christ has been given all power and authority in heaven and in earth. Head of a new race, the children of God.

Now that we know that Christ lives in the true believer. The child of God needs to live our lives by the principal of obedience, to bring others to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ, and to know God's authority.

After the flood God established laws and ordained human government. He gave men the authority to enforce His laws. God did this for the protection of mankind. People were so sinful and rebellious that without some form of government it would not have been possible to control evil. We must obey God's delegated authority in order to be fully obedient to God.

The definition of Delegated Authority: A delegated authority is someone who represents God's authority. All authority belongs to God, but God has two ways in which He exercises His authority. 1. Direct Authority: this means that God tells us directly through His Word or through the Holy Spirit what He wants us to do. 2. Delegated Authority: this means that God designates certain people to represent Him and to exercise His authority. God not only directs us personally, but He also directs us through His delegated authorities. Who are these certain delegated authorities? They are Parents, law enforcement organizations, and government officials. They need to be obeyed because they are ordained by God, and disobedience to them is disobedience to God. Romans 13:1 - 7 “Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same: For he is the minister of God to thee for good. But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil. Wherefore ye must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake. For this cause pay ye tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour.” Titus 3:1 “Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work.” 1 Peter 1:12 - 20 “Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation. Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: As free, and not
using your liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king. Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the forward. For this is thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. For what glory is it, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if, when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God.”

There are four basic structures of authority. God has established the Family, Government, Church, and Business as the basic structure of authority.  A. Family: God has an arrangement of authority in the family and it is the father head of the house under God, the wife subject to her husband and the children subject to their parents. Genesis 3:16 “Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception; in sorrow thou shalt bring forth children; and thy desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee.” Ephesians 5:22 “Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.” Colossians 3:18 - 20 “Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as it is fit in the Lord. Husbands, love your wives, and be not bitter against them. Children, obey your parents in all things: for this is well pleasing unto the Lord.” God has placed authority in the parents. Parents represent God’s authority. Ephesians 6:1, 4 “Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right.” And, ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.  B. Government: God has an arrangement of authority in government. It is national leaders, local leaders, and citizens. Due to the sinful and rebellious nature of men God established laws and set up government. God gave men the authority to enforce His laws, for our protection and for our own good and well being to restraint evil that we might live a quiet peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. 1 Timothy 2:2 “For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.” Romans 13:1 “Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God.” 1 Peter 2:13 “Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord’s sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme.” Christians need to be good citizens to be a good testimony for the Lord. It will give Him glory and honor. Matthew 22:21 “They say unto him, Caesar’s. Then saith he unto them, Render therefore unto Caesar the things which are Caesar’s; and unto God the things that are God’s.”  C. Church: God has an arrangement of authority in the church. It is Jesus Christ the head of the church, church leaders, and church members. God’s plan is that Christ be the head of every church and then under Christ are God’s appointed leaders such as pastors, elders, bishops, deacons and teachers. We are subject to God’s delegated authority of the church. Ephesians 5:23 “For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the saviour of the body.” 1 Peter 5:2, 3 “Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof; not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.”  D. Business: God has an arrangement of authority in business. Our employer represents God’s delegated authority at work. Here is the order of how business should be delegated first the owner then supervision and then employees. We honor God in our work when we do our best for Jesus sake. Colossians 3:22 “Servants, obey in all things your masters according to the flesh; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing God;” 1 Peter 2:18 “Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the forward.” Colossians 3:17, 23, 24 “And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him. And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men; knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.” We must remember that God ordains all delegated authorities. We must obey all God's
delegated authority to be obedient to God. We need to pray for the family, government officials, our church leaders, and those who are above us at work.
CHAPTER 20

THE CULTURAL ISSUES

A. Abortion  B. Homosexuality  C. Death Penalty  D. Euthanasia

In my research of cultural issues I came across a couple of books which I studied and found they were relying on the Word of God to awaken many that just don’t know how to react to cultural issues especially Christians. The first book is “Christian Ethics in a Postmodern World” by James P. Eckman, President and Professor in Theology, Ethics, and History at Grace University, Omaha Nebraska. The other book is the “Scripture Workbook” by Gary F. Zeolla. Are these Cultural Issues ethically and morally right? Did you know that a survey by the Alan Guttmacher Institute in New York found that 18% of abortion patients that describe themselves as born-again or evangelical Christians, nearly one in five who murder their children profess their faith in Christ? There are non-Christians that do not believe that abortion is a moral right! There are Christians that believe homosexuality is an alternative lifestyle! I know non-Christians that believe homosexuality is not an alternative lifestyle. I know Christians that say they do not believe in abortion and homosexuality, yet vote for government officials that support abortion and homosexuality. What is wrong with this picture? How sad it is that people can be so obtuse about the issues mentioned or just do not know how to react to the issues and have no concern of the ethics and morals of this country and think it does not affect everyone. Proverbs 14:34 “Righteousness exaleth a Nation: but sin is a reproach to many people.”

Ethics comes from the Greek word ethos, meaning a “stall” for horses, a place of stability and permanence. The word morality comes from the Greek word mores, meaning, way of being, character. It describes the shifting behavioral patterns of society. In the Latin mores means, habits. Ethics is what is normative, absolute and do not change. It refers to a set of standards around which we organize our lives and from which we define our duties and obligations. It results in a set of imperatives that establishes behavior patterns that are acceptable. It is what people ought to do. Morality is more concerned with what people do. It describes what people are already doing, often regardless of any absolute set of standards.

In order for the human race to see what is morally and ethically right they need to see where the human race came from and what the human race is, and where is it heading. In order to do this we need to go to the source of all truth which is the direct authority the infallible Word of God. Throughout this book we have went to the Word of God to find the truth and we will not deviate from that course of action. His Word sets the standards and principals. His Word sets the ethics and morals for the world, the human race.

The Christian in the world today needs to know about cultural issues. They need to know what they believe about it and be awakened to the truth and know why they believe what they believe. Christians are in a war with the kingdom of the world. This kingdom is under the power of Satan. Christians are in the Kingdom of God’s dear Son, the Kingdom of Light, which is under the power of the Holy Spirit. We need to be prepared to stand for standards and principals from God’s Word. 2 Corinthians 5:20 “Now then we are ambassadors for Christ.” Philippians 2:15 “That ye may be blameless, and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world.” Christians need to have convictions! Matthew 5:16 “Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.” Ephesians 5:8, 9 “For ye were sometimes darkness, but now ye are the light in the Lord: walk as children of
light: *Proving what is acceptable unto the Lord.*

In order to show how these cultural issues in the world are ethically and morally wrong we need to see what the world system is and who runs it, and to see whom the human race is and where it is headed.

THE WORLD SYSTEM

The Bible uses the word “world” in three different ways.

1. **Earth** - Acts 17:24 “God that made the **world** and all things therein.”

2. **People** - John 3:16 “For God so loved the **world,** that He gave His only begotten Son.”

3. **World System** - Romans 12:1, 2 “I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this **world:** but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.”

1 John 2:15 - 17 “Love not the **world,** neither the things that are in the **world.** If any man love the **world,** the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the **world,** the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the **world.** And the **world** passeth away and the lust thereof.”

2 Peter 1:4 “Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the **world** through lust.”

James 4:4 “Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the **world** is enmity with God? Whosoever therefore will be a friend of the **world** is the enemy of God.”

Ephesians 6:12 “For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this **world,** against spiritual wickedness in high places.”

Ephesians 2:2 “Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this **world,** according to the prince of power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.”

The World System is the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life. The world system includes commerce, politics, religion, education, entertainment, world kingdoms, and world organizations. Through these things comes the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life. Satan rules this world system and God permits him to do so, (Refer back up to Ephesians 6:12). Satan offers power, riches, possessions, worldly honors, intellectual achievement, social prestige as well as all kind of sinful pleasures. Satan offers much to make people satisfied to remain under his rule and to leave God out of their lives, and disregard the Bible, Gods Word.

The character of the world system is hatred against God and against His Son. *Psalms 2:2* “Why do the heathen rage, and the people meditate a vain thing? The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the Lord, and against His anointed.”

1 John 3:1, 13 “Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knoweth him not.”

Marvel not, my brethren, if the world hate you.”

2 Corinthians 4:3 “In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not.”

The purpose of the world system is to draw men's hearts away from God and from doing His will. Satan has something attractive and appealing to offer each person. He deceives the unsaved people, into thinking that the things of this life, are all that matter. He wants them to spend their lives seeking after these things so they will never have time to think they need the Lord Jesus Christ as their Savior.

Satan also uses attractive things of the world to turn the hearts of Christians from God and from doing His will. They will spend all their time seeking worldly things so they will not do
what God would have them to do. The will of God for Christians is to tell others of the Lord Jesus Christ. Proverbs 11:30 “The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; he that winneth souls is wise.” Convictions, standards, and principals fall by the wayside. Ethics and morals fall by the wayside. NO longer does the Christian stand for ethics and morals. Satan can and will deceive Christians too.

I would like to make a point now about Secular Humanism, which is part of the World System. It is deceiving Christians and non-Christians. Remember Satan wants to deceive the hearts of the human race.

Secular Humanism is part of the World System and it is from Satan and it is undermining Fundamental Christian ethics and morals based upon Gods Word. Secular Humanism has three enemies in it. 1. Cultural Relativism - is a cultural group that whatever it approves of, becomes right and whatever they disapprove of, it is wrong. There aren't any fixed principals to guide moral codes; culture determines what is right and wrong. 2. Situation Ethics - is whatever feels good and the end justifies the means. 3. Behaviorism - is behavioral psychology. Humans are products of forces beyond their control, whether it is through genetics or socially; therefore they are not responsible for their actions. These beliefs are from the kingdom of darkness the World System. Christians need to stand against these worldly beliefs.

I would like to make a point about this world system that the Christian lives in. John 17:14 - 16 “I have given them thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from evil. They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.” Christians are in the world but are not of the world. This means that the world system has much to offer. Colossians 1:18 “And He is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the first born from the dead: that in all things he might have the preeminence.” (first place). The Christian needs to put Christ first in everything he does. The Christian has a duty to work in the world system. It is not wrong to work in commerce, religion, politics, entertainment, education, and government kingdoms and many other professional or non-professional jobs. 1 Corinthians 10:31 “Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever you do, do all to the glory to God.” Colossians 3:23 “And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily unto the Lord, and not unto men.” Ephesians 6:5 - 7 “Servants, be obedient to them that are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ. Not with eye service, as unto menpleasers; but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart: With good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not unto men.” 2 Thessalonians 3:10 - 13 “For even when we were with you, this we commanded you, that if any would not work, neither should he eat. For we hear that there are some, which walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies. Now them that are such we command and exhort by our Lord Jesus Christ, that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread. But ye, brethren, be not weary in well doing.” There are Christians in politics, entertainment, religion, education, commerce, and many other things of this world system. But Christians must remember to give Christ first place, follow the Word of God and give Him the glory in all they do.

Is it wrong for the Christian to have intellectual achievement, power, riches, honor, and possessions? No, it is not wrong as long as we give the Lord the glory, honor and worship. And follow His Word and love Him and give Him first place in our lives. We are nothing without Him. We are weak without Him. It is Him that has given the Christian the physical abilities, talents, and knowledge to do the things that we do in this world system. We are in the world system but not of the world system. It is when the Christian says I, I, I, not your will be done Lord God but my will be done. This is when the Christian falls under the power of Satan in the world system and becomes of it. He does it for his own glory, power, honor and gain.
Now we know what the World System is all about, what about the people who live here on this planet (the world) and in the world system. Let’s look at the human race.

THE HUMAN RACE

Colossians 1:16 “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers, all things were created by Him, and for him.” Genesis 1:1 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.” Genesis 1:26 - 28 “And God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that crept upon the earth. So God created man in His own image, in the image of God created he him: male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.” Genesis 2:7 “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Adam was the first human being.

When God created man He created them with three parts, body, soul, and spirit. 1 Thessalonians 5:23 “And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly: and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” A. The body is the outer part of man, which can be seen. All the body parts are which, we function with like the eyes, feet, nose, hands, and etc. B. The soul is the part of man, which cannot be seen. Genesis 2:7 “And the LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” The soul has three parts the mind, emotions and the will. The mind is what we think with and to express thoughts. Genesis 2:19 “And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof.” The emotions express love or hate. The will is the free choice to do right or wrong, to obey or disobey. C. The spirit is that part of man which can know God and receive His life and a place where God could come and dwell. Man can only glorify God by having His Spirit dwelling in him and to have a personnel relationship and communication with him. The soul of man is the overpowering source in man. If man does not have the Spirit of Christ he will be self-centered, and the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life will rule him, along with Satan's kingdom of darkness. If man has received His Spirit he can be led, taught, and guided by the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life of service for God. But again man must have the will to receive Him and to live for Him.

Now looking at the verse in Genesis 1:31 “And God saw every thing that he had made, and behold, it was very good.” Everything that God made was perfect. God intended the lion to lay down with the lamb. He intended for the human race to live forever. He intended that there be no sin, death, disease, sickness, sorrows, weather disasters, or any number of other disasters that you might think of. The fall of man brought in all the pains of the human race. God created the first man, because He wanted a race of people who would obey, love, worship and glorify Him. God wanted to have fellowship with the human race. Adam is the father of the whole human race. But Adam rebelled. Adam and Eve sinned in the Garden of Eden. They disobeyed God. That was their sin. Disobedience is sin. Adam produced a race of sinners. The whole creation was ruined. Remember Genesis 1:31 “It was very good?” Now it was ruined.

Adam died on the day he disobeyed God. I would like to teach here where we must all understand what happened in the Garden that day. Adam died! Did Adam and Eve fall over dead when they ate of the fruit? NO, then what happened? What does the Bible mean when it
said when they ate of the fruit that they would surely die. Genesis 2:17 “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” What is death? The word death in the Greek is thanatos it has two meanings.

A. It is physical death, the spirit of man separated from the body. B. It is spiritual death, the spirit of man separated from God. Death is the opposite of life. It never denotes non-existence.

Spiritual life is conscious existence in communion with God. Spiritual death is a tormented conscious existence in separation from God. Both of these are the punishment, penalty of sin.

Instead of Adam having God’s life within him, the whole human race became separated from God because of sin. This was a spiritual death and physical death. Instead of having God's nature, the whole human race became sinful and self-centered. Sin has separated Adam and the whole human race from God. God is HOLY, HOLY He cannot have fellowship with sin; He cannot be in the presence of sin. Fellowship with God was cut off. The human race is spiritually dead, and also will die physically. The human race stands guilty before God because they have disobeyed His Law. Romans 5:12 “Wherefore, as by one man (Adam) sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.” Romans 5:15b “For if the offence of one (Adam) many be dead.” Romans 5:17 “For if by one (Adam) mans offence death reigned by one (Adam).” Romans 5:18 “Therefore as by the offence of one (Adam) judgment came upon all men to condemnation.” Romans 3:10 - 12 “As it is written, there is none righteous, no, not one.” There is none that understandeth; there is none that seeketh after God. They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.” Romans 3:19 “Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.” Galatians 3:10 “For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” Romans 3:23 “For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.” Jeremiah 17:9 “The heart is deceitful above all things, desperately wicked, who can know it.” Psalms 51:5 “Behold, I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.” Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” Revelation 21:8 “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake, which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.”

The whole human race is condemned. The human race is guilty before God. The penalty for sin is death, hell. The human race deserves it.

So now we know who the human race is and what is wrong with it and where it is headed. But God is not done with the human race! He still wants a race of people that will obey, love, worship and glorify Him and to have fellowship with Him and live with Him forever. He wanted the human race to have a way back to Him not to be separated from Him. God cannot be in the presence of sin this is why we are separated from Him, and the penalty of sin is death. God is HOLY. How would He do this? When Adam and Eve sinned God showed Adam and Eve what the penalty of sin was. Genesis 3: 21 “Unto Adam also and to his wife did the Lord God make coats of skins, and clothed them.” God showed that death of an animal with the shedding of blood was a covering for their sin. From that time forth there would be sacrificing of animals, a shedding of blood for a covering for sin. Genesis 4: 4 “And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof, and the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering.” Exodus 12:5 - 7, 13 “Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year: you shall take it out from the sheep, or from the goats: and you shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month: and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening. And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts on the
upper doorpost of the house, wherein they shall eat it. And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where you are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you when I smite the land of Egypt.”  Exodus 12:21 - 23, 26, 27

“Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the Passover. And you shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house till the morning. For the Lord will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the Lord will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you. That you shall say, it is the sacrifice of the Lord’s Passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.”

Hebrews 9:22b “without the shedding of blood there is no remission.” Isaia 53:7 “He (Jesus Christ) was oppressed and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth: He is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearsers is dumb, so He openeth not his mouth.” This was the prophecy of Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God to take away the sins of the world. John 1:29 “The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sins of the world.” Thirty times Jesus was called the Lamb of God in the New Testament. Romans 5:9 “Much more then being now justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath through Him.” Romans 3:25 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood.” Hebrews 9:28a “So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many.” Colossians 1:14, 19 “In whom (Jesus Christ) we have redemption through His blood, even the forgiveness of sins.” “And, having made peace through His blood of His cross by Him to reconcile all things unto himself; I say, whether they be things in the earth, or things in heaven.”

I would encourage you to read the book of Exodus and Leviticus and see that all the sacrificing of animals took place in the Tabernacle on the brazen altar. The sacrificing of animals and the Tabernacle were pictures and types of Jesus Christ of the one who was to come to be the Lamb of God the Savior of the world.

So now we see Jesus Christ as our substitute for the penalty of sin. Let me show you in the Scriptures. Matthew 27:45, 46 “Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? That is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?” God turned His back on Christ. He could not look upon Him because He became sin for the whole human race. Christ died and shed His blood for our sins. Through His shed blood, death and resurrection Jesus Christ the Lamb of God the Savior redeemed us and brought us back to God. Now we can be saved through Him. John 3:16 - 18 “That whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that He gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.” For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. He that believeth on Him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.” John 5:24 “Verily, Verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on Him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.” John 6:47 “Verily, verily, I say unto you. He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.” Romans 5:8 - 11 “But God commendeth His love towards us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. Much more then being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from the wrath through Him. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of His Son,
much more being reconciled we shall be saved by His life. And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.” John 8:24 “I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am He, ye shall die in your sins.” 2 Peter 3: 9 “God is not slack concerning His promise, as some men count slackness; but is long-suffering toward us, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” God sent His Son to bring us back to Him. 2 Corinthians 5:21 “For He hath made Him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him.” After a person accepts Christ that person becomes a child of God, accepted into the family God, receives Christ’s Righteousness and Holiness, receives the divine nature of God, and the Holy Spirit comes to indwell in the believer, now this person can have fellowship with God and love, worship, and glorify Him, and to commune with Him and live forever. It is only through the Lord Jesus Christ that God can accept the human race and make them His child and bring them into the Kingdom of His dear Son. Galatians 3: 26 “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.” John 14:6 “I am (Jesus Christ) the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”

We have just read what the World System and the Human Race are. Where do you stand on these two topics? Are you apart of the World System? You are in the human race and before you can make the right decision on these cultural issues you need to go to the next two steps.

ARE YOU BORN AGAIN?

This is the most important question that can be asked. Why? Because Jesus Christ commanded that one must be born again. John 3:3, 7 “Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.” Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again.”

Remember that the spirit is that part of man, which can know God and receive His life and a place where God could come and dwell. Man can only glorify God by having His Spirit dwelling in him to have a personal relationship and communication with him. The soul of man is the overpowering source in man. If man does not have the Spirit of Christ he will be self-centered, and the lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and the pride of life will rule him along with Satan’s kingdom of darkness. This is why the human race needs to be born again. If man has received His Spirit he can be led, taught, and guided by the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life of service for God. But again man must have the will to receive Him and to live for Him.

If you are not born again here are the reasons why you don't understand God's Word or understand the things of God and why you will not enter heaven when you die. 1 Corinthians 2: 9 - 14 “But as it is written. Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love Him. But God hath revealed them unto us (born again believers) by His Spirit: for the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. For what man knows the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? Even so the things of God knows no man, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit, (born again believers) which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak not in the words which man’s wisdom teaches, but which the Holy Spirit teaches, comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man (people that have not been born again) receives not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he
know them because they are spiritually discerned. But he (born again believers) that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man. For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we (born again believers) have the mind of Christ.” 1 John 4:13 - 15 “Hereby know we (born again believers) that we dwell in Him, and He in us, because He hath given us of His Spirit. And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Savior of the world. Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him and he in God.” 1 John 5:1a “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” Romans 10:9 “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” John 8:24 “I said therefore unto you that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I Am He, ye shall die in your sins.” Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.” Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith, and that not of ourselves: it is a gift of God: Not of works lest any man should boast.” Salvation is a free gift it cannot be earned, or worked for. You cannot be religious, or good enough to receive Salvation. Christ did all the work on the cross. Romans 5:1 “Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.” There are many more verses that prove that we are justified by faith and not of works. I did address this issue in chapters 8 and 9. Works is what we do for the One who saved us. Works is what we do because we love the One who saved us. Works is what we do to show Christ and others that we have accepted Him as Lord and Savior. James 2:18 “Yea, a man may say, thou hast faith, and I have works: show me thy faith without thy works, and I will show thee my faith by my works.” Genuine faith in Jesus Christ the Lord produces works. Works produced by faith in Jesus Christ justifies our faith.

Have you forsaken all worldly goods, and religious philosophies, worldly and religious traditions, rituals, rules, regulations, cultural ideals, other religions, and good works for Salvation? Have you admitted that you have broken God’s Law and have sinned against Him and that you deserve hell? Have you repented for your sins; confessed with your mouth the LORD JESUS? Have you believed in your heart that the LORD JESUS CHRIST is the Son of God believed that He shed His blood and died for your sins, arose bodily from the grave? If you have done that then you are a true believer. The LORD JESUS CHRIST is the only way to heaven. Acts 4:12 “NEITHER IS THERE SALVATION IN ANY OTHER: FOR THERE IS NONE OTHER NAME UNDER HEAVEN GIVEN AMONG MEN, WHEREBY WE MUST BE SAVED.” Ephesians 2:8, 9 “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is a gift of God. Not of works, lest any man should boast.” My hope is built on nothing less, but Jesus blood and righteousness, I dare not trust the sweetest frame but wholly lean on Jesus name. I will not trust in anything else but Christ for my salvation.

All the great so called philosophers and theologians, writers of great wisdom of other religions, that give you sincere ways to live to bring you closer to God to be accepted by Him WILL NOT get you into heaven. Jesus Christ is the way, the truth, and life. The Bible gives the true wisdom for life and how to have eternal life. 1 John 5:11 - 13 “And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son, hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of God.”
ARE YOU SURRENDERED TO THE HOLY SPIRIT?

The Holy Spirit is the one who teaches you to discern the things of God in His Word. God’s Word teaches all the values, principals, standards, ethics, and morals for your life. The Holy Spirit guides and leads you in your life. After you accept Christ He begins to work in you and change your way of thinking. Right wisdom = right thinking = right actions. This is what is called a Spirit led life. Ephesians 4:17 - 24 “This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that you henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work an uncleanliness with greediness. But you have not so learned Christ; if so be that you have heard Him, and have been taught by Him, as the truth is in Jesus: That you put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts. And be renewed in the spirit of your mind: and that you put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.” 2 Corinthians 5:17 “Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature, old things passed away; behold, all things are become new.” 2 Corinthians 7:1 “Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all the filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of the Lord. Romans 12:1 - 2 “I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is good, and acceptable, and perfect will of God.” 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20 “What? Know you not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which you have of God, and you are not your own? For you are bought with a price; therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God’s.” Galatians 5:16 “This I say then, walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfill the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that you would. But if ye be led of the Spirit ye are not under the law. Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; sexual immorality, fornication, uncleanness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, self ambition, dissension, strife, heresies, drunkenness, orgies and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.” Philippians 4:8, 9 “Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things. Those things, which you have both learned and received and heard, and seen in me, do: and the God of peace shall be with you.”

So now you see what a Spirit led life is. Gods Word will guide you and help you to discern what is right and do what is right. A life in Christ is a victorious life. He came to seek and to save the lost and give us victory over Satan and the lust of the flesh and lust of the eyes and the pride of life.

Now let's take a look at these Cultural Issues and see what God's Word says about them.
A. ABORTION

The abortionists disagree that life begins at conception and that it is a modern idea that must be rejected. It is not an exaggeration that the abortion issue be called the modern holocaust. James P. Eckman author of “Christian Ethics” commented that, and I quote him “In 1973 in the case of Roe vs. Wade the United States Supreme Court handed down the most radical decisions in modern history.” (19) The Court declared that it is a right to privacy for women to choose to have an abortion. Then they further said that the “health of the mother” concept had to play a role in the choice of abortion. Because of that decision the United States has the most liberal abortion laws in the world. Since 1973 forty – seven million babies have been aborted in the United States. Approximately 1.3 million babies were aborted in 2006. Consider this: more Americans have died because of abortion than have died in the Civil War, both World Wars, Korean War, Vietnam War, Persian Gulf War, and the current war in Iraq combined. More babies are killed each day in America than the total number of people killed in the terrorist attack on September 11, 2001. There are as many abortion deaths each year as there are caused by heart disease and cancer combined, an average of 3,600 babies are killed each day – that’s 150 deaths per hour, and one baby lost every two and half minutes. (20) The count of deaths are staggering, but even Christians have a hardened heart towards this act of murder conveying the thought that mothers have a right to choose. The mother can have several types of abortions, which are for health risks, mental anguish, financial burdens, birth defects, rape or incest. Each procedure or method of abortion is the murdering of a human being. The procedures are gruesome, and inhumane. The sanctity of life has to return to America.

Christians need to have a biblical view for this issue. The abortionists disregard the Bible truth about this inhumane procedure and yet some actually have used the Bible to justify their beliefs about choice abortion. If you have read the previous chapters in this book about the human race you will be reminded what God's Word has said about these deceivers. Romans 1:21, 22, 25 “Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools. Who changed the truth of God into a lie.” The abortionists claim that the fetus is not human. They also claim that it is not a person because it has no function because it is in the womb. To be a person it does not matter where you are or how you are functioning, you are still a person. Is the fetus a human being? A fetus is a human being. The literally meaning of fetus means “little one” in Latin. The Webster's Dictionary says a fetus has, “passed the early stages of development and attained the basic final form prior to birth.” At conception, all aspects of humanness, as defined by DNA, are present. Is the human fetus a person? Yes, because the DNA strands of the embryo are species-specific. Because of that the embryo is a person, so it has individual rights, a right to life. The human being is the image-bearer of God. We are the crown of God’s creation. God is Omniscient; Omnipotent, Omnipresent and the human being to Him has great value, and is precious. The Word of God expresses how important the person is in the womb in the following verses. Exodus 21:22 - 24 “If men strive, and hurt a woman with child, so that her fruit depart from her, and yet no mischief follow: he shall be surely punished, according as the woman's husband will lay upon him; and he shall pay as the judges determine. And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life for life, Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.” Isaiah 49:1, 5 “Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far; The LORD hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name. And now, saith the LORD that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the LORD, and my God shall be my strength.”
These verses were referring to the Messiah and God had a plan, a mission for Him from the womb. God also had a plan for Jeremiah and John the Baptist as we see in the next two verses. Jeremiah 1:5 “Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.” Luke wrote in Luke 1:5 “For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb.” Let us read Psalms 139:13 - 18 “For you created my inmost being: you knit me together in my mother's womb. I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: marvellous are thy works; and that my soul knoweth right well. My frame was not hidden from you when I was made in the secret place. When I was woven together in the depths of the earth, your eyes saw my unformed body. All the days ordained for me were written in your book before one of them came to be. How precious also are thy thoughts unto me, O God! how great is the sum of them! If I should count them, they are more in number than the sand when I awake, I am still with thee.”

David expressed how God's power created him in the womb, how He made his skeleton. He mentions how God seen his unformed substance referring to the embryo. God knows all about each embryo and values the embryo very highly, which is a person. God said to Abraham in Genesis 17:16 “I will bless her and will surely give you a son by her. I will bless her so that she will be the mother of nations; kings of peoples will come from her.” God promised Abraham and Sarah a son and she did give birth and named him Issac. God sees the future of a person before they are even conceived. He sees the embryo with a future in mind. The nation of Israel came through this lineage. I would like to just share a few verses in the bible that mentions the word “womb” and I hope you will see the significance of these verses. There is a plan for each individual that God has. Galatians 1:15 “But when it pleased God, who separated me from my mother's womb, and called me by His grace.” Acts 3:2 “And a certain man lame from his mother's womb was carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple which is called Beautiful, to ask alms of them that entered into the temple; who seeing Peter and John about to go into the temple asked an alms. And Peter, fastening his eyes upon him with John, said, Look on us. And he gave heed unto them, expecting to receive something of them. Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk. And he took him by the right hand, and lifted him up: and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength. And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, praising God. Peter went on to write two Epistles and the lame man that was healed went on to live normal life we assume. There are many more instances in the bible where if abortion was the choice what would of happen in the course of life, just like we read in the verses of Jeremiah, Isaiah, and Genesis. Read also these verses in 2 Samuel 11:1 – 27, Judges 13:5 – 7, Psalms 106:35 – 39.

Where is the balance of rights in this issue? The abortionist's say that only the mother has the rights, but the fetus is a human being, a person, and they should have the right to live. What about their rights? I can hear them now crying out “please give me the chance to have life! Please give me a chance to live!!!!”

What about our tax dollars that are paying for the abortions and insurance companies that pay for them? Should taxpayers have their money paying for abortions? The answer is no!

In Acts 19:23 – 27 we will see an important assertive reason why the abortionists defend their position. “And the same time there arose no small stir about that way. For a certain man named Demetrius, a silversmith, which made silver shrines for Diana, (a false goddess) brought no small gain unto the craftsmen; Whom he called together with the workmen of like occupation, and said, Sirs, ye know that by this craft we have our wealth. Moreover ye see and hear, that
not alone at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, this Paul hath persuaded and turned away much people, saying that they be no gods, which are made with hands: so that not only this our craft is in danger to be set at nought; but also that the temple of the great goddess Diana should be despised, and her magnificence should be destroyed, whom all Asia and the world worshippeth.” The greed of money is involved but the bottom line is that abortion is the worst form of child abuse. It kills a baby and wounds the mother for life.

Now I will give you some abortion procedures that are done. It is gruesome, and inhumane. The Bible is right when it mentions what the human race is capable of doing.

**Suction Abortion:** Used during the first three months of pregnancy - A suction tube (27 times stronger than a home vacuum cleaner) is inserted into the womb. The powerful suction tears the baby a part limb from limb and sucks it from the womb along with the placenta. The baby's remains are deposited into an attached waste bottle.

**Dilation and Curettage (D&C):** Used at the end of the third month of pregnancy (approximately 12 weeks) - The cervix is dilated, ring forceps are inserted into the womb and the baby is extracted piece by piece. Then a curette (a sharp knife in a loop shape) is inserted and used to scrape away any of the baby or the placenta that remains. Profuse bleeding follows.

**Dilation and Extraction (D&E):** Used after 13 weeks - The cervix is dilated and the unborn child is dismembered with plier - like forceps. Force is needed to pull the baby apart. The instrument is used to seize a leg or other part of the body and then, with a twisting motion, tear it from the baby's body. The baby's spine is snapped and the skull crushed. After the baby parts are removed, they are reassembled outside the womb to be sure all are removed. Frequently baby parts are left inside the mother's womb. This can cause serious complications and sometimes death.

**Partial Birth Abortion:** Partial Birth Abortions are used from the 4th month through the end of the 9th month of pregnancy. These late term abortions are regularly used to kill healthy babies that pose no danger or threat to their mother. For this abortion, the abortionist uses ultrasound to locate the unborn baby's legs. Forceps are then used to pull the baby's legs through the birth canal, delivering the baby feet first, except for the head. Scissors are then used to puncture the base of the back of the head. A suction device is then inserted to suction out the baby's brain so the skull will easily collapse. The dead baby is then removed. On December 7, 1995, the United States Senate passed the Partial Birth Abortion Ban Act which would end partial-birth abortions by a margin of 54 - 44. House members voted 2 to 1 in favor of the ban, 288 - 139 (Republicans 215-15; Democrats 73-123; Independents 0-1). When it reached the desk of President Bill Clinton on April 10, 1996, he vetoed the Act, thereby allowing the brutal procedure to continue with no restrictions. Our former President Clinton vetoed the bills to outlaw this gruesome procedure. Former Surgeon General C. Everett Koop, along with hundreds of physicians and the Physicians' Ad Hoc Coalition for Truth (PHACT) said that this “procedure” is never necessary to save the life of the mother. The American medical Association's Council on Legislation voted UNANIMOUSLY to recommend to the AMA Board of Trustees to endorse the Ban on Partial Birth Abortions. Once again on Oct. 8, 1997, the House passed a Partial Birth Abortion Ban by a veto-proof vote of 296 - 132. The Senate passed the bill in May (64 - 36), three votes less than the two-thirds majority that would be needed to override Clinton's veto. On Oct. 10, 1997, President Clinton again signed the veto papers, this time privately and without fanfare in the Oval

Because the human race is in a fallen estate of sin from Adam we can see from God's word what the human race can do. Romans 1:19 - 22 “Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shown it unto them. For the invisible things of Him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even His eternal power and Godhead so that they are without excuse. Because that, when they knew God, they glorified Him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.” Genesis 6: 5 “And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.” Genesis 11:6b “and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do.” Mark 7:20 - 23 “And He said, that which cometh out of the man, that defileth the man. For from within, out of the heart of men proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornication, murders, thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness: all these evil things come from within, and defileth.” These verses reveal what man is capable of doing. I pray that in America, Christians will keep praying and remembering when it is time to vote they vote for the candidate that will help stop the murdering of innocent babies. Murdering a human being is an attack on the Creator God. It is the rejection of His sovereignty over human life.

B. HOMOSEXUALITY

The doctrine of Secular Humanism with its situation ethics to have liberty and rights is infiltrating our morals and standards of society, disregarding God's Word for guidance in the issue of Homosexuality. Homosexuality was unthinkable and unacceptable years ago, but now it is being called an alternative life style, which is being accepted gradually through politics, religion, education, business, arts, and entertainment. Again in this book we have a repetition of God's Word to prove what is morally and ethically right. Education has a procedure that is the foundation for learning and that is repetition. In this book we have God's Word repeating over and over again the truth of the issues of life. We must be on guard of secular humanism with its situation ethics and worldly philosophies being repetitiously teaching our children and adult society.

There is a story I once heard which I think applies to what is happening to those who once believed in morals, ethics, and standards. It is the story of a person who took a pan of cold water and put it on the stove and put a frog in it. The frog was very comfortable. The person turned on the burner and the water started to heat up, and the frog just sat there very comfortable. The water continued to get hot, the frog just sat there very comfortable and the water got hotter, and the frog just sat there as the water became hotter and hotter. Then the water started to boil and the frog came floating to the top and was dead. This is what is happening in America today, we are gradually accepting immorality and then wonder why our country is in the shape it is in. Proverbs 14:34 “Righteousness exalteth a nation: but sin is a reproach to any people.”

We must use God's Word to have the guidance in this issue. Genesis 2:20 - 25 “And Adam
gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him. And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man. And Adam said, this is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man. Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave (like glue) unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh. And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.”

When Jesus dealt with questions about human sexuality, He referred back to Genesis 2:20 - 25. In Matthew 19:4 - 6 “And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female, And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they shall be one flesh? Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.”

Mark 10:6 - 9 “But from the beginning of the creation God made them male and female. For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and cleave to his wife; And they twain shall be one flesh: so then the y are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.”

How can one sincerely believe after these verses that homosexuality is a morally accepted lifestyle? Now if you have not read my previous chapters on the human race I will show you what man is, in his fallen condition.

Romans 1:18 – 32 “For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness; Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them: for God hath shewed it unto them. For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse: Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, And changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things. Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen. For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error which was meet. And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient; Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers, Backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful: Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.”

In the next series of various assortments of the books from God’s Word I will show you how that homosexuality is condemned and found as a defiled lifestyle.
Genesis 13:12 – 13 “Abram dwelled in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelled in the cities of the plain, and pitched his tent toward Sodom. But the men of Sodom were wicked and sinners before the LORD exceedingly.”

Genesis 18:20 “And the LORD said, Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous;”

Genesis 19:1 – 29 “And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant’s house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat. But before they lay down, the men of the city, even the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter: And they called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where are the men which came in to thee this night? bring them out unto us, that we may know them. (the phrase that we might know them is found 10 times in the bible and it means relations. It is a word for sexuality.) And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him, And said, I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly. Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do ye to them as is good in your eyes: only unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof. And they said, Stand back. And they said again, This one fellow came in to sojourn, and he will needs be a judge: now will we deal worse with thee, than with them. And they pressed sore upon the man, even Lot, and came near to break the door. But the men put forth their hand, and pulled Lot into the house to them, and shut to the door. And they smote the men that were at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great: so that they wearied themselves to find the door. And the men said unto Lot, Hast thou here any besides? son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever thou hast in the city, bring them out of this place: For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the LORD; and the LORD hath sent us to destroy it. And Lot went out, and spake unto his sons in law, which married his daughters, and said, Up, get you out of this place; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. But he seemed as one that mocked unto his sons in law. And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city. And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the LORD being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city. And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed. And Lot said unto them, Oh, not so, my Lord: Behold now, thy servant hath found grace in thy sight, and thou hast magnified thy mercy, which thou hast shewed unto me in saving my life; and I cannot escape to the mountain, lest some evil take me, and I die: Behold now, this city is near to flee unto, and it is a little one: Oh, let me escape thither, (is it not a little one?) and my soul shall live. And he said unto him, See, I have accepted thee concerning this thing also, that I will not overthrow this city, for the which thou hast spoken. Haste thee, escape thither; for I cannot do any thing till thou be come thither. Therefore the name of the city was called Zoar. The sun was risen upon the earth when Lot entered into Zoar. Then the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the LORD out of heaven; And he overthrew those
cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground. But his wife looked back from behind him, and she became a pillar of salt. And Abraham got up early in the morning to the place where he stood before the LORD: And he looked toward Sodom and Gomorrah, and toward all the land of the plain, and beheld, and, lo, the smoke of the country went up as the smoke of a furnace. And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities in the which Lot dwelt.” Judges 19:20 – 24 “And the old man said, Peace be with thee; howsoever let all thy wants lie upon me; only lodge not in the street. So he brought him into his house, and gave provender unto the asses: and they washed their feet, and did eat and drink. Now as they were making their hearts merry, behold, the men of the city, certain sons of Belial, beset the house round about, and beat at the door, and spake to the master of the house, the old man, saying, Bring forth the man that came into thine house, that we may know him. And the man, the master of the house, went out unto them, and said unto them, Nay, my brethren, nay, I pray you, do not this folly. Behold, here is my daughter a maiden, and his concubine; them I will bring out now, and humble ye them, and do with them what seemeth good unto you: but unto this man do not so vile a thing.” Leviticus 18:22, 23, 29 “Thou shalt not lie with mankind, as he lieth with a woman: it is abomination. Neither shalt thou lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith: neither shall any woman stand before a beast to lie down thereto: it is confusion.” It is very clear in God's Word that homosexuality is wrong. And in Leviticus 20:13 “If a man also lie with mankind, as he lieth with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.” 1 Corinthians 6:9, 10 “Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.” 1 Timothy 1:9 - 11 “Knowing this, that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient, for the ungodly and for sinners, for unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers, For whoremongers, for them that defile themselves with mankind, for menstealers, for liars, for perjured persons, and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine; According to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust.”

IT IS PLAINLY SEEN that God’s Word condemns the homosexual lifestyle as contrary to the ethical standard that God established in the ordinance of marriage. Of course there is those who will reject God’s Word for the infallibility and final authority of Scripture.

Let’s take a world view from the Secular Humanists. 1. **Cultural Relativism** - is a cultural group that whatever it approves of becomes right and whatever they disapprove of, it is wrong. There aren't any fixed principals to guide moral codes; culture determines what is right and wrong. 2. **Situation Ethics** - is whatever feels good and the end justifies the means. 3. **Behaviorism** - is behavioral psychology. Whether it is through genetics or socially, humans are products of forces beyond their control. Therefore they are not responsible for their actions. These beliefs are from the kingdom of darkness the World System. homosexuals are affiliated with these groups and help to promote their beliefs in education, churches and politics. Christians need to stand against these worldly beliefs. The important point to remember is that if there is a genetic role in homosexuality's cause, the Bible still condemns it and God's power is sufficient to overcome it, no matter what its cause. It is all of these groups that believe that homosexuals are genetically born this way. Most all of your liberal politicians believe this lie also.

Let me just add something about genetics, what if genetics caused me to be a murderer, to be
violent, a rapist, to be suicidal, should it be justified of what I do? Of course it should not be accepted, just as homosexuality should not be accepted. There is hard fact and documentation from Pastors who have led homosexuals to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ that have turned them from their homosexuality lifestyle. The Lord Jesus Christ can change the life of anyone, who puts their faith in Him, and trusts Him to help them every day. They must choose to do so. Remember Ephesians 6:12 "For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

C. DEATH PENALTY

Many religious people, Christians, liberal and conservative politicians oppose the death penalty today. Those who do support it must have a biblical foundation to support it. Those that do not support abortion but do support the death penalty have been accused of not being pro–life. This is a false accusation. In my studies on the issue I know that God's Word supports the death penalty and I do support it, and will prove it from God's Word. There are some that do not support the death penalty and use God's Word to support their view. The Christians and religious people that use God's Word to support their view have taken verses out of context and have not made an extensive study on the issue. There are many issues that are very hard to see what God's Word reveals so one must pray, study, and have the guidance of the Holy Spirit to discern His Word to give us truth.

Let us first look at the claims the opposition uses to defend their ideals. 1. Vengeance is prohibited for the Christian; mercy and love should be shown. Matthew 5:38 - 42 “Yea have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: But I say unto you, That yea resist not evil: but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. And if any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have thy clothe also. And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain. Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away.” 2. Forgiveness and love, not vengeance, should be shown to others. Romans 12:17 - 21 “Recompense to no man evil for evil. Provide things honest in the sight of all men. If it were possible, as much as lithe in you, live peaceably with all men. Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but rather give place unto wrath: for it is written, Vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord. Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head. Be not overwise of evil, but overcome evil with good.” Matthew 5:43, 44 “You have heard that it was said, Love your neighbor and hate your enemy. But I tell you: Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you.” 3. People are created in the image of God, so murders should not be executed. Genesis 1:26 - 28 “And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.”

4. Miscellaneous views: We are under Grace not under the Law, Cain is not executed for murdering his brother, and the woman who committed adultery is not executed.

Now you have some of the claims why many do not support the death penalty, but I will
take God's Word and defend the death penalty.

We need to focus on a biblical defense whether it is the responsibility of the state to pass judgment on an individual that has committed pre-meditated murder and sentence him to death. I believe that man is God’s crown of creation, or image bearer. Murdering another human is rejection of God’s sovereignty over human life. Do you see the root word in sovereignty? It is reign. It means that God reigns over us. Let us read Deuteronomy 32:39 - 43

“See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand. For I lift up my hand to heaven, and say, I live forever. If I whet my glittering sword, and mine hand take hold on judgment; I will render vengeance to mine enemies, and will reward them that hate me. I will make mine arrows drunk with blood, and my sword shall devour flesh; and that with the blood of the slain and of the captives, from the beginning of revenges upon the enemy. Rejoice, O ye nations, with his people: for he will avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries, and will be merciful unto his land, and to his people.”

God’s Word makes the case for capital punishment as a just obligation of the state. Let me explain the Noahic Law (human government). This is when Noah exited the ark and God established, instituted, a new corporate relationship with the human race and a new code in human government. The highest function of government is the protection of human life, out of which arises the responsibility of capital punishment. Man is not individually to avenge murder but, as a corporate group, he is to safeguard the sanctity of human life as a gift of God which cannot rightly be disposed of except as God permits. God has delegated the power of civil government to man. Man’s responsibility in this delegated authority, civil government, has not ceased as some have thought but, will cease when Christ sets up His kingdom here on earth. The Mosaic Law was God's moral law revealing to Moses God's delegated authority of capital punishment. Not all of the Mosaic Law was abolished when the age of Grace, the New Covenant was ushered in by the atoning substitutionary sacrifice of Christ for sin. Only the laws of the Levitical Priesthood, Feasts, Sabbath’s, Sacrifice of birds, and animals were done away with. A careful study should be made about the issues I just mention. Read chapters 7 – 10 of Hebrews and Colossians 2:14 – 23. The moral laws of the Mosaic Law were never abolished.

It is very important to know that God Himself instituted a link between sin and death. God has sentenced the human race to death because of our sin. Read the verses yourself. Genesis 2:15 – 17 “And the LORD God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it. And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death.” Romans 5:12 “Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned .”

Let me show you some verses from The Noahic Law and Mosaic Law: First from the Noahic Law: We must remember that the reason given for capital punishment for murder is the sanctity of human life. The Noahic Law continues until God brings the new heaven and new earth. Genesis 8:18 – 22 “And Noah went forth, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him: Every beast, every creeping thing, and every fowl, and whatsoever creepeth upon the earth, after their kinds, went forth out of the ark. And Noah builded an altar unto the LORD; and took of every clean beast, and of every clean fowl, and offered burnt offerings on the altar. And the LORD smelled a sweet savour; and the LORD said in his heart, I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth;
neither will I again smite any more every thing living, as I have done. While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.” The Noahic Law commands the execution of murderers: Genesis 9:5 - 6 “And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of every man’s brother will I require the life of man. Whoso sheddeth man’s blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.” The Noahic Law is made with all people. Genesis 9:9, 12 “And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you, and with your seed after you; And God said, This is the token of the covenant which I make between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for perpetual generations.” Mosaic Law: God’s moral law is also part of the Noahic Law. Exodus 21:23 - 25 “And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life for life, Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, Burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.” Exodus 21:12 “He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death.” The death penalty is for pre-meditated murder. Exodus 20:13 “Thou shalt not murder.” Capital punishment is not for unintentional or spontaneous killing. Leviticus 24:17, 21 “And he that killeth (murder) any man shall surely be put to death.” And he that killeth a beast, he shall restore it: and he that killeth (murder) a man, he shall be put to death.” Deuteronomy 4:41, 42 “Then Moses severed three cities on this side Jordan toward the sunrising; That the slayer might flee thither, which should kill his neighbour unawares, and hated him not in times past; and that fleeing unto one of these cities he might live.” Deuteronomy 19:4 - 12 “And this is the case of the slayer, which shall flee thither, that he may live: Whoso killeth his neighbour ignorantly, whom he hated not in time past; As when a man goeth into the wood with his neighbour to hew wood, and his hand fetcheth a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the head slippeth from the helve, and lighteth upon his neighbour, that he die: he shall flee unto one of those cities, and live: Lest the avenger of the blood pursue the slayer, while his heart is hot, and overtake him, because the way is long, and slay him; whereas he was not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past. Wherefore I command thee, saying, Thou shalt separate three cities for thee. And if the LORD thy God enlarge thy coast, as he hath sworn unto thy fathers, and give thee all the land which he promised to give unto thy fathers; If thou shalt keep all these commandments to do them, which I command thee this day, to love the LORD thy God, and to walk ever in his ways; then shalt thou add three cities more for thee, beside these three: That innocent blood be not shed in thy land, which the LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and so blood be upon thee. But if any man hate his neighbour, and lie in wait for him, and rise up against him, and smite him mortally that he die; and fleeth into one of these cities: Then the elders of his city shall send and fetch him thence, and deliver him into the hand of the avenger of blood, that he may die.” Numbers 35:16 - 35 “And if he smite him with an instrument of iron, so that he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. And if he smite him with throwing a stone, wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. Or if he smite him with an hand weapon of wood, wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. The revenger of blood himself shall slay the murderer: when he meeteth him, he shall slay him. But if he thrust him of hatred, or hurl at him by laying of wait, that he die; Or in enmity smite him with his hand, that he die: he that smote him shall surely be put to death; for he is a murderer: the revenger of blood shall slay the murderer, when he meeteth him. But if he thrust him suddenly without enmity, or have cast upon him any thing without laying of wait, Or with any stone, wherewith a man may die, seeing him not, and cast it upon him, that he die, and was not his enemy, neither sought his harm: Then the congregation shall judge between the slayer and the revenger of blood according to these judgments: And the congregation shall deliver the slayer out of the hand of the revenger of
blood, and the congregation shall restore him to the city of his refuge, whither he was fled: and he shall abide in it unto the death of the high priest, which was anointed with the holy oil. But if the slayer shall at any time come without the border of the city of his refuge, whither he was fled; And the revenger of blood find him without the borders of the city of his refuge, and the revenger of blood kill the slayer; he shall not be guilty of blood: Because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession. So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings. Whose killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person to cause him to die. Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession. So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings. Whose killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person to cause him to die. Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession. So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings. Whose killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person to cause him to die. Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession. So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings. Whose killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person to cause him to die. Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession. So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

I would like to ask a question. Who acted out the execution of the murder? It was God's delegated authority, which gave them the right to execute judgment and the execution of the murder. This was God's order of things on earth. He set up human governments to keep law and order for the protection of the people to live a quiet peaceable life if all possible. If there was no government or God's delegated authority here on earth we would have anarchy, which would cause lawlessness in the country. We have to have law to cause deterrents for people who want to commit all kinds of crime. In the Noahic and Mosaic Laws we have the principal of talionic (retaliation as authorized by law) justice which is law of like punishment. It is not a harsh principal of justice, for it establishes the principal that punishment should fit the crime.

We need to have an explanation of God's delegated authority to understand the authority of God that He gave us to govern our country and to abate the murdering of innocent people.

What is a Delegated Authority? A delegated authority is someone who represents God's authority. All authority belongs to God, but God has two ways in which He exercises His authority. 1. Direct Authority: this means that God tells us directly through His Word or through the Holy Spirit what He wants us to do. 2. Delegated Authority: this means that God designates certain people to represent Him and to exercise His authority. God not only directs us personally, but He also directs us through His delegated authorities. Who are these certain delegated authorities? They are Parents, law enforcement organizations, and government officials, they need to be obeyed because they are ordained by God, and disobedience to them is disobedience to God. Romans 13:1 - 7 “Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same: For he is the minister of God to thee for good. But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil. Wherefore ye must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake. For this cause pay ye tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour. Titus 3:1 “Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work.” Romans 13:4 “But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil.” The state is the only authority that is to execute the death penalty. The word sword here is machaira, which refers not only to a sword used in battle, but also to a sword in executions, as when Herod killed James, the brother of John. Acts 12:1, 2 “Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth his hands to vex certain of the church. And he killed James the brother of John with the
spear."

1 Peter 1:12 - 20 "Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation. Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord’s sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: As free, and not using your liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king. Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the forward. For this is thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. For what glory is it, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if, when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God.”

In Matthew on the Sermon on the Mount Jesus preached a beautiful message and a powerful one.

Let’s look at it. Matthew 5:9, 21, 38, 39 “Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God.” Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: But I say unto you, That ye resist not evil: but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also.” Luke 24:36 “And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.” These verses are talking about murder or how those who do commit murder will be in judgment from His delegated authority. Did this sermon teach us that capital punishment is not morally right? No! These verses are misinterpreted by many. These verses are teaching us on how to treat our neighbor's and others in our everyday lives not when it comes to governing the land to abate those who murder innocent people.

In God’s Word we read that Jesus preached peace, and love. Matthew 5:43 - 45 “Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.” Again these verses are teaching us on how to treat our neighbor's and others in our everyday lives not when it comes the delegation of authority of the death penalty.

Let me just add here that those who do commit murder in our cities across this Nation shouldn't they be held accountable and be responsible for their actions? Today they want freedom to do wrong, and not be held accountable for they’re actions. What about the innocent ones that, suffer through the murdering of a loved one? Yes, forgive those who have done such a hideous crime, but they must be accountable for what they have done according to law. I do pray for them that do such things, I do love them, I would do anything that I could to show them the gospel of Jesus Christ, I would feed them, but they still must face judgment which is the death penalty.

Jesus Christ never explicitly overturned Capital Punishment. Jesus upheld the Old Testament Law in Matthew 5:17 - 19 “And he said unto him, Why callest thou me good? there is none good but one, that is, God: but if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. He saith unto him, Which? Jesus said, Thou shalt do no murder, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Honour thy father and thy mother: and, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.” Jesus commanded the man to do no murder. John 19:10, 11
“Then saith Pilate unto him, Speakest thou not unto me? knowest thou not that I have power to crucify thee, and have power to release thee? Jesus answered, Thou couldest have no power at all against me, except it were given thee from above: therefore he that delivered me unto thee hath the greater sin.” Jesus in this verse showed that God had given a delegated authority. Jesus never mentions any alternate of punishment for murders. You cannot find a verse anywhere that Jesus says that murders should be spared.

Those that do not support the death penalty claim that we are under grace and not under the law. The claim of “under grace” is clearly talking about salvation and not executing someone. I do not need to go into this claim at great depth because it is clearly evident that the Scriptures from Romans to Colossians that we are justified, forgiven, righteous, redeemed, not condemned, by the grace of God through faith in our Lord Jesus Christ and not the law. We still have the Law but it is to bring us unto Christ. Galatians 3:24 “Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.” Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.” Galatians 3:10 “For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” Galatians 2:21 “I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.” So as you see with only a few verses mentioned that we are under grace for salvation and not under the law for salvation. Is the Law good? Romans 7:7 “What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.” Many Christians frustrate the grace of God. Grace is unmerited favor, a gift of God. It can’t be bought or earned. The grace that God gives us is eternal life through faith in Christ His Son.

D. EUTHANASIA

Richard Lamb the former governor of Colorado in the 1980’s argued that the elderly must die, embracing euthanasia, to make way for the young, who simply cannot afford the medical care needed. With people like this deceiving others the pressure for euthanasia will grow rapidly. The liberal politician will make sure it is a false liberty that people should have. You can usually know how one views euthanasia by how they view abortion. They both focus on human life. The human being in the womb and the 90 year old are valued highly by God because both are an image-bearer of God the crown of God's creation.

The word euthanasia derives from two Greek words “well” or “good” death. Today many are focusing on death with dignity in establishing constitution rights to give the rights to humans to die the way they choose. Let’s look at some of the methods involving euthanasia to cause death to the patient. Voluntary or Involuntary euthanasia is when the patient requests or takes an active role in deciding death. Active euthanasia is when a love one determines the method used to bring the death, it might be a weapon, or pulling the plug on a life saving machine. Passive euthanasia is when natural means is allowed by the patient to cause death without any other intervention. Direct or Indirect euthanasia stresses the role of the patient who dies from a specific action. Doctor - assisted suicide is where a medical doctor gives medicine or equipment to the patient to cause death.

Christians should have a different view on death because of the Lord Jesus Christ. This is
the door in which the Christian must go through to be with Christ unless Christ returns for the Christians to translate them out before the great tribulation.

We need to look at God's Word to see what death is. In the Bible the word death is found four hundred and ninety one times. God's Word plainly tells us what death is. It is first seen in Genesis 2:17 “But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.” Adam and Eve did eat of the tree and because of their disobedience, which is sin, were separated from God, and death was passed unto them and down upon the whole human race. Hebrews 9:27 “And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:” Romans 5:12, 17, 21 “Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: “ For if by one man’s (Adam) offence death reigned by one;” “That as sin hath reigned unto death.” Romans 6:23 ‘For the wages of sin is death.” 1 Corinthians 15:21a “For since by man (Adam) came death.” Sin results in separation from God, which is spiritual death and physical death. But the Lord Jesus Christ has given us victory over death. He conquered death through His resurrection. Romans 5:10, 17, 21 “For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.” “For if by one man’s offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.” “That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.” Romans 6:23 “For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.” Romans 6:9 “Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over him.” 1 Corinthians 15:54 - 56 “So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law.” 1 Peter 1:3 “Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.”Philippians 1:21 “For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain.” Death means to be with Jesus with all our life struggles over, and to be with Him will be glorious. Revelation 21:4 “And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.” For the Christian, death is the door that we will go through to be with Christ. Death remains in the hand of God because He is Sovereign. He reigns over the human race.

God's Word teaches every person is dignified and worthy of respect. It is always proper and ethical to fight for life. God's Word shows this is true. Genesis 1:26, 27 “And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.” Genesis 9:1 - 6 “And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered. Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat. And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. Whoso
sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.”
James 3:9, 10 “Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of God. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.”

Because of God's Omniscient (all knowing), Omnipresent (everywhere), Omnipotent (all powerful), His Sovereignty and His Authority He has the right to be obeyed in the value of life and the dignity of human life. He holds the hand of life and death. For us to step out and take human life no matter the stage of condition and destroy it is sin against God.

The Parliament in the Netherlands has given the power to doctors to abet those who are terminally ill, or are struggling with certain mental or emotional disorders to take their own lives. Dr. Kervorkian has abetted over 100 people to take their own lives. This cheapens life, to treat it with little value and with no dignity. In his book “Christian Ethics” Dr. James P. Echman said it right, “To allow the widespread of euthanasia is to foster a culture of death. Another implication of the Judeo-Christian view of life is that person hood is defined in biological terms. A human is a person whose life starts at conception not at birth. Person hood is not defined according to I.Q., a sense of the future, a capacity to relate to other human beings, or any other such criteria.” We must always remember that God creates life and defines it from the beginning of conception and sustains life.

The quality of life ethic is a very frightening belief that has to do with person hood. The people that believe in the quality of life ethic claim that a human being is not a person. When, it has an I.Q. lower than 40, it does not have a sense of future and past, does not relate to others, and does not have a balance of rationality and feelings. They believe in euthanasia and infanticide (killing of infants), which they can murder, a baby after it is a week old.

The Christian Hospice movement is offering a powerful alternative for Christians today. They can provide care that helps the patient at home with drugs, medicines, and loving comfort, meet the human needs whatever the specific situation. The care can be spiritually encouraging, with the reading of God's Word, prayer, edifying opportunities to show God's goodness, grace, love and the hope of eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.
CHAPTER 21
A CHRISTIAN ATTITUDE TOWARDS WAR

I really do not want to be repetitious but I must remind you over and over again that this subject could take volumes of books to try to support a Christian’s attitude toward war. This chapter is only going to try to give a biblical perspective view and hope that it will help. It may not convince those that do not support but hopefully it will give some light on this issue. I believe that Christians should abhor war and should be a peaceful people. I personally do hate war and do not want to see it. I believe in peace. Romans 12:18 “If it all possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men.” I also believe that Christians should avoid war as much as possible but, I do have a few questions though that I would like to ask for those who are reading this that take the position of peace and not war. What if America and England turned their heads from Nazi Germany when Hitler was conquering Europe and said no war but peace? I will tell you that we would have a different world right now if America and England would have taken that position! Thank God we knew that there was a cause! What if America would’ve turned the other cheek when we were attacked at Pearl Harbor? I say thank God again that we saw a cause to defend our country and others in that time!

I have repeatedly said in this book that a biblical foundation must rest upon one’s belief. I will not deviate from using God’s Word and reveal that there is a biblical foundation for the issue of war being morally right. So is the issue of war morally right? What does the bible say about war?

We need to look first at the word "kill" and see what it really means in the bible. In the King James Version it states in Exodus 20:13 “Thou shalt not kill.” The word kill in the Hebrew does mean kill but it is always associated with murder. In verse 13 it is talking about pre-meditated murder. And also in Numbers 35:16 - 35 “And if he smite him with an instrument of iron, so that he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. And if he smite him with throwing a stone, wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. Or if he smite him with an hand weapon of wood, wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.” Deuteronomy 19:12 “But if any man hate his neighbour, and lie in wait for him, and rise up against him, and smite him mortally that he die, and fleeth into one of these cities: Then the elders of his city shall send and fetch him thence, and deliver him into the hand of the avenger of blood, that he may die.” So as you can see from the bible the word kill from the Hebrew has to do with murder.

When the nation of Israel was at war in the conquest of Canaan, God’s Holy judgment was on the nations that occupied this territory. This land was God’s promise to the Nation of Israel. Deuteronomy 20:9 - 20 “And it shall be, when the officers have made an end of speaking unto the people, that they shall make captains of the armies to lead the people. When thou comest nigh unto a city to fight against it, then proclaim peace unto it. And it shall be, if it make thee answer of peace, and open unto thee, then it shall be, that all the people that is found therein shall be tributaries unto thee, and they shall serve thee. And if it will make no peace with thee, but will make war against thee, then thou shalt besiege it: And when the LORD thy God hath delivered it into thine hands, thou shalt smite every male thereof with the edge of the sword: But the women, and the little ones, and the cattle, and all that is in the city, even all the spoil thereof, shalt thou take unto thyself; and thou shalt eat the spoil of thine enemies, which the LORD thy God hath given thee. Thus shalt thou do unto all the cities which are very far off from thee, which are not of the cities of these nations. But of the cities of these people, which the LORD thy
God doth give thee for an inheritance, thou shalt save alive nothing that breatheth: But thou shalt utterly destroy them; namely, the Hittites, and the Amorites, the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; as the LORD thy God hath commanded thee: That they teach you not to do after all their abominations, which they have done unto their gods; so should ye sin against the LORD your God. When thou shalt besiege a city a long time, in making war against it to take it, thou shalt not destroy the trees thereof by forcing an axe against them: for thou mayest eat of them, and thou shalt not cut them down (for the tree of the field is man's life) to employ them in the siege: Only the trees which thou knowest that they be not trees for meat, thou shalt destroy and cut them down; and thou shalt build bulwarks against the city that maketh war with thee, until it be subdued.” Was the Nation of Israel guilty of murder in God's eyes? No, because they were God's instruments of war to take the land that God had promised them, and to cleanse the evil out of the land. Exodus 15:3 “The LORD is a man of war: the LORD is his name.” Deutoronomy 20:1 - 4 “When thou goest out to battle against thine enemies, and seest horses, and chariots, and a people more than thou, be not afraid of them: for the LORD thy God is with thee, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. And it shall be, when ye are come nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people, And shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your hearts faint, fear not, and do not tremble, neither be ye terrified because of them; For the LORD your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies.” Judges 3:1, 2 “Now these are the nations which the LORD left, to prove Israel by them, even as many of Israel as had not known all the wars of Canaan; Only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, to teach them war, at the least such as before knew nothing thereof.” 2 Chronicles 32:6 – 8 “And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the street of the gate of the city, and spake comfortably to them, saying, Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there be more with us than with him: With him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the LORD our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.” God in His sovereignty wanted Israel to know that there was going to be war and to prepare itself to defend their land.

There is a time though that war would cease for a time. Ecclesiastes 3:8 “A time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace.” Joshua 11:18, 23 “Joshua made war a long time with all those kings. So Joshua took the whole land, according to all that the LORD said unto Moses; and Joshua gave it for an inheritance unto Israel according to their divisions by their tribes. And the land rested from war.” The Nation of Israel had a time of peace and a time of war.

Abraham even had to go to war in Genesis 14:12 - 16 “And they took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who dwelt in Sodom, and his goods, and departed. And there came one that had escaped, and told Abram the Hebrew; for he dwelt in the plain of Mamre the Amorite, brother of Eschol, and brother of Aner: and these were confederate with Abram. And when Abram heard that his brother was taken captive, he armed his trained servants, born in his own house, three hundred and eighteen, and pursued them unto Dan. And he divided himself against them, he and his servants, by night, and smote them, and pursued them unto Hobah, which is on the left hand of Damascus. And he brought back all the goods, and also brought again his brother Lot, and his goods, and the women also, and the people.” Abraham could not turn his head and do nothing. He had to fight for his brother and his family’s freedom.

Now we see that God condoned war for the reason of the conquest of Canaan and to cleanse it of the ungodly nations that inhabited it. Cleansing evil is important because of its terrible consequences it can have where it is abiding. There was even a cleansing in heaven. Revelation
And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels. War is to fight evil, and to overcome it either by force or diplomacy so that good can exceed. Evil can influence and suppress and that's why the Nation of Israel by the Lords command was to cleanse it from their land. God cleansed heaven of it. All we have to do is to remember history and see how evil can threaten the well being of all people of all Nations.

Let us now take a look at the New Testament in God's Word and see what is said about war. Now I have mentioned that sincere Christians protest the death penalty and make the claim of “under grace not under the law.” Those that do not support the death penalty claim also this same statement for peace and not war. This claim is clearly talking about salvation and not about war. I do not need to go into this claim at great depth because it is clearly evident that the Scriptures from Romans to Colossians that we are justified, forgiven, righteous, redeemed, not condemned, by the grace of God through faith in our Lord Jesus Christ and not the law. We still have the Law but it is to bring us unto Christ. Galatians 3:24 “Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.” Galatians 2:16 “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.” Galatians 3:10 “For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” Galatians 2:21 “I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.” So as you see with only a few verses mentioned that we are under grace and not under the Law for salvation. Is the Law good? Sure it is, and it should be followed to show that we are saved and that we love the Lord. Many Christians frustrate the grace of God when they use the claim "under grace and not the law." Grace is unmerited favor, a gift of God, it can't be bought or earned it is in this grace that God gives us eternal life through faith in Christ His Son.

Just like I mentioned in the previous chapter about the death penalty it was just after the flood that God established laws and ordained human government. He gave men the authority to enforce His laws. God did this for the protection of mankind. People were so sinful and rebellious that without some form of government it would not have been possible to control evil. We must obey God's delegated authority in order to be fully obedient to God.

What is a Delegated Authority? A delegated authority is someone who represents God's authority. All authority belongs to God, but God has two ways in which He exercises His authority. 1. Direct Authority: this means that God tells us directly through His Word or through the Holy Spirit what He wants us to do. 2. Delegated Authority: this means that God designates certain people to represent Him and to exercise His authority. God not only directs us personally, but He also directs us through His delegated authorities. Who are these certain delegated authorities? They are Parents, law enforcement organizations, government officials, and they need to be obeyed because they are ordained by God, and disobedience to them is disobedience to God. Romans 13:1 - 7 “Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation. For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Wilt thou then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same: For he is the minister of God to thee for good. But if thou do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil. Wherefore ye must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for
conscience sake. For this cause pay ye tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour.” Titus 3:1 “Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work.” 1 Peter 1:12 - 20 “Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation. Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: As free, and not using your liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king. Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the forward. For this is thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. For what glory is it, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if, when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God.” 1 Timothy 2:2 “For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.” Romans 12:18 “If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men.” Hebrews 12:14 “Pursue peace with all men, and the sanctification without which no one will see the Lord.” From these verses, we are clearly shown that it ought to be a Christian's goal to live in peace with everyone obeying the higher powers over them. If those that did not obey the high powers they would suffer the penalty of punishment due to them. Obviously it is impossible to always be at peace with everybody and peace is still something that we are to strive after. Until the power of sin over mankind is conquered by the Gospel of Jesus Christ, we will be faced with criminals seeking to do evil and criminal nations with criminal leaders seeking to do evil.

There are many various groups that will take the position of biblical pacifism. If pacifism is biblical then why wasn't it taught in the Old Testament? The God of the Old Testament is the same God of the New Testament. Hebrews 13:8 “Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.” Biblical pacifism is not taught in the scriptures. Jesus Christ never preached explicitly about war. In God's Word we read that Jesus preached peace, and love. Matthew 5:38 - 39, Jesus says, “You have heard that it was said, Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth. But I tell you, do not resist an evil person. If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other.” Matthew 5:43 - 45 “You have heard that it was said, Love your neighbor and hate your enemy. But I tell you: Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, that you may be sons of your Father in Heaven.” Matthew 26:52 “But Jesus said to him, Put your sword in its place, for all who take the sword will perish by the sword.” In these verses we can love our enemies but it doesn’t mean that we can’t protect our fellow beings from the evil that our enemies are trying to press against us and it those that pursue with the sword for evil is the ones that will perish not the ones trying to protect themselves with the sword. To love thy neighbor is to protect them. In Matthew on the Sermon on the Mount Jesus preached a beautiful message and a powerful one. Does the sermon teach us that war is immoral? Let’s look at it. Matthew 5:9, 21, 38, 39 “Blessed are the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of God. Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: But I say unto you, That ye resist not evil: but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also.” Luke 24:36 “And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.” Jesus Christ did preach peace and love, I agree with that one hundred percent. We should pursue peace, love,
gentleness, and kindness. In the previous verses that I just mentioned Jesus Christ was talking about the issues of life in dealing with people not when it came to dealing with Nations dealing with war. He also said pray for your enemies and rightly so, to help them to realize that the security of peace of our Nation and other Nations are being threatened and to change their hearts for peace. But look what He said that we would have in the world. Matthew 24:6 - 7 “And you will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not troubled; for all these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. And there will be famines, pestilences, and earthquakes in various places.” I did not read anywhere in that verse saying that we should not partake in these wars.

Pacifism expresses no war, or violence, and that all things can be settled peacefully. In Revelation 19:11 - 16 “Now I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse. And He who sat on him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He judges and makes war. His eyes were like a flame of fire, and on His head were many crowns. He had a name written that no one knew except Himself. He was clothed with a robe dipped in blood, and His name is called The Word of God. And the armies in heaven, clothed in fine linen, white and clean, followed Him on white horses. Now out of His mouth goes a sharp sword, that with it He should strike the nations. And He Himself will rule them with a rod of iron. He Himself treads the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And He has on His robe and on His thigh a name written: KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.” Now this is the same Jesus that preached in the gospels. Again realize that Jesus does not seek violence, but can and will use it when dealing with evil. The same attitude should be true of His followers. Scripture says we are not to seek violence as would the criminal. But in these passages we use weapons to cleanse out evil and not to use for evil. Luke 22:36 “And he who has no sword, let him sell his garment and buy one.” Luke 11:21 “When a strong man, fully armed, guards his own palace, his goods are in peace.”

I would like to make one more point. Paul in Ephesians chapter 6 he mentions that Christians are in a spiritual warfare with the devil. He uses all kinds of war armor of that day in history, in his analogy of the war with Satan. Paul never condems the armor of war but knows that people are familiar with it because Christians are faced with war in this world. And remember we are in a real war with the devil. Ephesians 6:11 - 17 “Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:”

Throughout history probably since the fifth century conservative Christian theology has put forth 7 rules for a just war.

1. **Just War:** Only defensive war is legitimate.
2. **Just intentions:** To secure peace for all parties involved. A greater good than harm will be the result.
3. **Last Resort:** All diplomacy and economic pressure has been exhausted.
4. **Formal Declaration:** Only governments can declare a war, not individuals, militias, terrorists, revolutionists, mercenaries.
5. **Limited Objectives:** Secure peace. Once achieved hostilities cease. Complete destruction of economically, political institutions is an improper objective.

6. **Proportionate Means:** Only what are needed in combatant weapons should be used to secure peace, deter future attacks, and repel aggression.

7. **Noncombatant immunity:** Civilians, prisoners of war, wounded, individuals not partaking in the war should be immune to intentional attacks.

   Let us therefore conclude that until Jesus Christ Personally returns, we can expect wars and possible violent acts of criminals. We should certainly not seek to commit these things, but neither should we shy away from them when dealing with evil persons who would make war on us personally or nationally.
Revelation 4:11 “Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.”

“O Lord my God, When I in awesome wonder, Consider all the worlds Thy Hands have made; I see the stars, I hear the rolling thunder. Thy power throughout the universe displayed. When through the woods, and forest glades I wander, And hear the birds sing sweetly in the trees. When I look down, from lofty mountain grandeur, and see the brook, and feel the gentle breeze. Then sings my soul, my Savior God, to Thee, How great Thou art, How great thou art. Then sings my soul, My Savior God, To Thee, How great Thou are, How great Thou art.” That song was by Carl G. Boberg and R. J. Hughes.

My approach on the subject of creation is the belief that God is the creator of the world and all that is in it. That he made man in His own image and that the bible can be trusted above all other books as a book of true documentation about creation.

Creation is a subject of great scientific and theological argument. My belief is that I was created personally by a personal loving God. He created everything seen and unseen. Scripture awakened me to this FACT!!

Let me give you some information that I read in a science magazine called “Kids Discover.” It did give some very interesting detailed information about the earth but of course left out the Christian view point of creationism. Here is there theory how the earth was formed. Scientists believe that about 5 billion years ago, a massive explosion from an exploding star (maybe?) caused gas and dust to start swirling in space. Then gravity caused this dust to pack together. That’s it, that’s all they say how the earth came about. Then they go on to say that the next 500 million years saw the Sun form and then 9 planets and 94 moons and countless asteroids and comets that make up the solar system were formed (maybe?) from other exploding stars. Our children our being taught a lie not that there is 9 planets and 94 moons but that God is not the creator of all that is seen and unseen. It is a lie from the devil that has entered the hearts of sinful men who are deceived and kept in darkness from the truth of God’s Word. We are going to have a generation of children that will be Godless and then we will wonder what went wrong in America. Let God be true. Why is it, that, man is so quick to believe what he teaches rather than believe what God says in His Word? The hearts of man are desperately wicked. Jeremiah 17:9, 10 “The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.” I would like to add an additional comment on this magazine that I read. They gave a brief history of the world and labeled it “The Long and Winding Path” that gave the different timescales which starts out with the Pre-Cambrian age and of course down through their timescale the evolution of life. This magazine won the highest achievement children’s magazine category and the 1996 and 1997 parent’s choice gold award. I have mention in this book Satan in chapter 16 and the World System in chapter 20. I suggest you go back and review and see what devious ways they can draw the human race from God.

Evolution is not a view of creation, because there is no creator involved. The view of evolution is that life originated by natural process, beginning with the first living substance (a single cell) continuing with the evolving of species. It is impossible to prove scientifically any theory of origin because the scientific method is based on observation and experimentation, and
it is impossible to make observation or conduct experiments on the origins of the universe. The
time of evolution is not a proven fact. Christian scientists state that science assertively shows
us the intelligent design of the universe and that intelligent designer is God and God alone. How
can one really believe there was no intelligent designer when you take a glimpse of the human
body and see the complexity of it? I just recently read that the human body consists of 60,000
miles of arteries, veins, capillaries, and blood vessels and that the human heart will beat over
100,000 times in one day. How fearfully and wonderfully we are created!

Infidel scientist’s and those that follow and believe their teachings of evolution should be
reminded of these verses in Romans 1:18 – 25 “For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven
against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;
Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath shewed it unto them.
For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood
by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without
excuse: Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were
thankful: but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.
Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, And changed the glory of the uncorruptible
God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and
creeping things. Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own
hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: Who changed the truth of God into a
lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever.
Amen.”

I’m not an expert of the science world but science is very interesting to me and we need
science but in a view of accepting God’s Word and claiming it as true and focusing on the
miracles of God’s creation and how He is the Almighty, All knowing, All powerful, All present,
above, beyond and greater than anything seen or unseen. My foundation of belief is simple; I
will by faith believe that God created everything according to his Word. Hebrews 11:3
 “Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things
 which are seen were not made of things which do appear.”

Here are 4 facts that I would like to share at this time about creation. Why did God create?
1. For His own sake: Psalms 104:31 “The glory of the LORD shall endure for ever: the LORD
shall rejoice in his works.” Colossians 1:16 “For by him were all things created, that are in
heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or
principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him;” 2. To express His
sovereignty: Psalms 89:11 “The heavens are thine, the earth also is thine: as for the world and
the fulness thereof, thou hast founded them.” Psalms 24:1 “The earth is the LORD's, and the
fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein.” 3. To reflect His character: Psalms
19:1, 2 “The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork. Day
unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge.” Romans 1:20 “For the
invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the
things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:” 4.
To show His wisdom: Psalms 104:24 “O LORD, how manifold are thy works! in wisdom hast
thou made them all: the earth is full of thy riches.” Proverbs 3:19 “The LORD by wisdom hath
founded the earth; by understanding hath he established the heavens.” Another aspect of
creation is not often conversed among Christians that the world and everything in it was created
by the Lord Jesus Christ. Some actually frown at this suggestion but let us look at scripture to
prove my point. When you read these verses the words, (who), (whom), (him), (his) and (he); it
is referring to the Lord Jesus Christ. Colossians 1:12 – 22 “Giving thanks unto the Father,
which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: Who (God)
hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his
**Evolution Produce an Eye? Not a Chance!**

The human brain consists of approximately 12 billion cells, forming 120 trillion interconnections. The light sensitive retina of the eye (which is really part of the brain) contains over 10 million photoreceptor cells. These cells capture the light pattern formed by the lens and convert it into complex electrical signals, which are then sent to a special area of the brain where they are transformed into the sensation we call vision. If a super computer is obviously the product of intelligent design, how much more obviously is the eye a product of intelligent design?

If a super computer is obviously the product of intelligent design, how much more obviously is the eye a product of intelligent design?

**Climbing the “Ladder of Life” In Grand Canyon.**

I found this article to be very interesting and educational well worth sharing. I'm not a scientist and only had a high school education on the science of creation, but, this is what Dr. Menton had to say about the “Ladder of Life.”

“I was challenged by an evolutionist colleague to visit the Grand Canyon in Arizona. He assured me that a hike into the Grand Canyon "would be a sure-cure for creationism." Here, he said, I would see that the many layers of rock forming the walls of the Canyon get progressively older as one descends from the rim (where the rocks are “only” about 60 million years old) to the bottom (where the rocks are said to be well over a billion years old). Then, he claimed, as I ascended the wall of the Canyon I would be climbing...”
up the evolutionary “ladder of life”! He assured me that the fossils in each succeeding layer of rock would reveal the progressive steps of over a billion years of evolutionary history, ranging from the first living cells to the early reptiles. Surely, if one is to see physical evidence of the progressive stages of evolution anywhere on earth, the Grand Canyon should be the place to look. Well, after researching the Grand Canyon, I accepted the challenge to pay it a visit. In fact, I visited the Canyon on three different occasions, and twice hiked its trails from river to rim. I discovered that not only are the evolutionist’s “missing links” truly missing - their whole “ladder of life” is missing!

The Grand Canyon is about 270 miles long and, in places, over a mile deep. Its walls reveal 21 distinct layers of mostly sedimentary rock. The deepest, and presumably oldest, layers of sedimentary rock in the Grand Canyon are collectively known as Precambrian (earliest era of geological history) strata. For over 100 years, geologists have searched for fossils in Precambrian layers all over the earth in hope that they might see how the first living organisms evolved. In the Canyon, as elsewhere, Precambrian fossils are largely limited to curious dome shaped, laminated structures called “stromatolites.” While there is some question whether these stromatolites are really a product of living organisms, similar structures are formed in our oceans today by mats of one celled photosynthetic (formation of carbohydrates in the chlorophyll containing tissues of plants exposed to light) organisms called “cyanobacteria.”

The next three layers of the Canyon (Tapeats Sandstone, Bright Angel Shale and Muav Limestone) are collectively identified as Cambrian (earliest geologic period) strata and are said to range from 600 million to 400 million years old. Here, many fossils of trilobites, oysters, clams, corals, worms, and brachiopods are suddenly found. All of these are marine invertebrates, and all (with the possible exception of trilobites) have representatives living in our oceans today. Paleontologists (a scientist that studies life of past geological periods from fossil remains) speak of the great “Cambrian explosion” because, all over the world, these layers show the sudden appearance of fossils representing virtually every phylum (a direct line of descent or lineage within a group) of animals. In not a single case is there fossil evidence to show what their presumed ancestors looked like -- they appear all at once and fully formed!

The next two fossil bearing layers encountered in our climb up the Canyon’s “ladder of life” are the Redwall Limestone (said to be 300 million years old) and the Supai group (200 million years old). These layers contain fossils of more marine invertebrates including three relatively simple types not seen in the lower layers - the (marine invertebrates) bryozoans, crinoids and foraminiferans. All three have living representatives in our oceans today. The foraminiferans are of particular interest because they are a phylum of one celled marine organisms that evolutionists consider to be among the first forms of life to have evolved a nucleus. Why then, are these “primitive” single cell organisms first encountered halfway up our “ladder of life”? So far, our “ladder” seems to be pretty much a “one rung” affair, with no obvious vector of evolutionary progress. It gets worse, however. The next rung shows evidence of footprints - but no feet!

One of the most amazing facts about the Grand Canyon is that no one has ever found a single fossilized bone in the Canyon! Beginning in the Supai layer and extending upward into the Hermit and Coconino layers, countless fossilized footprints of over 20 species of amphibians and reptiles suddenly appear - but no fossils of their bones or teeth! The bones of tetrapods (four legged animals) that could have made these footprints have only been found in more superficial strata located several miles away from the Canyon. Interestingly, the occurrence of footprints in strata well below the layers in which fossilized bones are first found is not unique to the Grand Canyon. Geologists concede that this is a worldwide phenomenon! How then can we consider the fossils in the geologic column to be a reliable record of evolutionary succession? Are we to believe that footprints evolved 150 million years before feet? Those who accept the
Biblical account of Noah's flood might prefer to think that the common occurrence of footprints in strata below those bearing the bodies themselves reveals something about how long these tetrapods could tread water before drowning!

**Even more amazing is the fact that most of the fossil footprints in the Coconino are headed in the same direction!** Are we to believe that for 10 million years, amphibians and reptiles mostly walked in the same direction? Not only are the majority of these footprints headed in a northerly direction, but this direction generally slopes uphill! While camping in the Canyon, I heard a park ranger give a lecture on its fossils. She was quite serious when she explained that geologists now believe the reason most fossil footprints head uphill is that the reptiles who made them always walked uphill (leaving footprints), but had a habit of sliding down hill! Certainly, one could make a more plausible argument for reptiles running up hill to escape the advancing waters of Noah's Flood, than one could for “lazy lizards.”

The top two layers of the Canyon are the Toroweap and Kaibab layers. Neither layer shows evidence of footprints of any kind and, of course, there is still no trace of bones. Fish teeth have been found in the Kaibab, but this is clearly a case of too little, too late. To add insult to injury, the Kaibab Limestone layer at the very top of our “ladder of life” shows the only evidence to be found in the Canyon of fossilized sponges! This is embarrassing to evolutionists, because sponges are a loose collection of living cells that are believed to be the first multicellular organisms to have evolved on earth.

It's easy to come away from the Grand Canyon thinking you have made a startling discovery that evolutionists ought to know about - there is no evidence of evolutionary progress in the fossils of the geologic column! I was surprised to learn that evolutionists are already aware of this fact, although you would never guess it from the evolutionary indoctrination presented in public schools and popular media. Harvard evolutionist Stephen J. Gould appears to have no illusions about the evidence for evolutionary succession in the geologic column when he says."

**“I regard the failure to find a clear vector (course of line) of progress in life's history as the most puzzling fact of the fossil record.”** (Natural History, Vol. 93, p. 23). **A hike to the bottom of the Grand Canyon is a sure cure for evolutionism, but don't expect to climb out on the “ladder of life.” It Isn't There!**(21)

Dr. David N. Menton made some excellent discoveries to prove creation. I'm thankful that God has touched men's hearts like this to show how God's Word is True and that there are many deceivers out there to try to deceive many who have not the knowledge of God’s Word. Just a bit of information that I would like to share with you is that, the Creation Museum has just opened June 1st 2007 in the Cincinnati, Ohio area. All you have to do is to go to their web site and get the information you are inquiring about. Their web site is [www.creationmuseum.org/](http://www.creationmuseum.org/).

Remember what I have said in previous chapters about man changing God's Truth into a lie? Romans 1:20 “For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:”

All of creation came into existence through the will and power of God. I believe in the Genesis account of creation, and that it is to be accepted literally, not allegorically (a narrated story) or figuratively. **In Genesis 1:1 - 31 you will read the account of God's creation. “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said, Let there be light: and there was light. And God saw the light, that it was good: and God divided the light from the darkness. And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the evening and the morning were the first day. And God said,**
Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters. And God made the firmament, and divided the waters which were under the firmament from the waters which were above the firmament: and it was so. And God called the firmament Heaven. And the evening and the morning were the second day. And God said, Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry land appear: and it was so. And God called the dry land Earth; and the gathering together of the waters called he Seas: and God saw that it was good. And God said, Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind, whose seed is in itself, upon the earth: and it was so. And the earth brought forth grass, and herb yielding seed after his kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed was in itself, after his kind: and God saw that it was good. And the evening and the morning were the third day. And God said, Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and years: And let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so. And God made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: he made the stars also. And God set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth. And to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness: and God saw that it was good. And the evening and the morning were the fourth day. And God said, Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl that may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven. And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind, and every winged fowl after his kind: and God saw that it was good. And God blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth. And the evening and the morning were the fifth day. And God said, Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after his kind: and it was so. And God made the beast of the earth after his kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind: and God saw that it was good. And God blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth. And God said, Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed, which is upon the face of all the earth, and every tree, in the which is the fruit of a tree yielding seed: to you it shall be for meat. And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to every thing that creepeth upon the earth, wherein there is life, I have given every green herb for meat: and it was so. And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.

Revelation 4:11 “Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honor and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.” Psalms 33:6 - 9 “By the word of the LORD were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. He gathereth the waters of the sea together as an heap: he layeth up the depth in storehouses. Let all the earth fear the LORD: let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of him.” Colossians 1:16 “For by Him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in the earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers, all things were created by Him, and for him.” Psalms 104:1 – 35 “Bless the LORD, O my soul. O LORD my God, thou art very great; thou art clothed with honour and majesty. Who coverest thyself with light as with a garment: who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain: Who
layeth the beams of his chambers in the waters: who maketh the clouds his chariot: who walketh upon the wings of the wind: Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire: Who laid the foundations of the earth, that it should not be removed for ever. Thou recoverdest it with the deep as with a garment: the waters stood above the mountains. At thy rebuke they fled; at the voice of thy thunder they hasted away. They go up by the mountains; they go down by the valleys unto the place which thou hast founded for them. Thou hast set a bound that they may not pass over; that they turn not again to cover the earth. He sendeth the springs into the valleys, which run among the hills. They give drink to every beast of the field: the wild asses quench their thirst. By them shall the fowls of the heaven have their habitation, which sing among the branches. He watereth the hills from his chambers: the earth is satisfied with the fruit of thy works. He causeth the grass to grow for the cattle, and herb for the service of man: that he may bring forth food out of the earth; And wine that maketh glad the heart of man, and oil to make his face to shine, and bread which strengtheneth man’s heart. The trees of the LORD are full of sap; the cedars of Lebanon, which he hath planted; Where the birds make their nests: as for the stork, the fir trees are her house. The high hills are a refuge for the wild goats; and the rocks for the conies. He appointed the moon for seasons: the sun knoweth his going down. The young lions roar after their prey, and seek their meat from God. The sun ariseth, they gather themselves together, and lay them down in their dens. Man goeth forth unto his work and to his labour until the evening. O LORD, how manifold are thy works! in wisdom hast thou made them all: the earth is full of thy riches. So is this great and wide sea, wherein are things creeping innumerable, both small and great beasts. There go the ships: there is that Leviathan, whom thou hast made to play therein. These wait all upon thee; that thou mayest give them their meat in due season. That thou givest them they gather: thou openest thine hand, they are filled with good. Thou hidest thy face, they are troubled: thou takest away their breath, they die, and return to their dust. Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created: and thou renewest the face of the earth. The glory of the LORD shall endure for ever: the LORD shall rejoice in his works. He looketh on the earth, and it trembleth: he toucheth the hills, and they smoke. I will sing unto the LORD as long as I live: I will sing praise to my God while I have my being. My meditation of him shall be sweet: I will be glad in the LORD. Let the sinners be consumed out of the earth, and let the wicked be no more. Bless thou the LORD, O my soul. Praise ye the LORD.

Man was created directly in God’s own image and after His own likeness; that means creation was not a matter of evolution or evolutionary change of species, or development through interminable periods of time from lower to higher forms. Genesis 1:26 - 28 “And God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.” Genesis 2:7 “And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Isaiah 43:1, 7 “But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine. Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.” I believe that all animal and vegetable life was created directly, and God’s established law was that they should bring forth only “after their kind.” Revelation 10:6 “And sware by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be
time no longer;” This was not an exhaustive study on creation but I hope and pray that you through reading this that you will accept the Bible as the final authority of your life. The Bible is where we find the source of truth.
CHAPTER 23

Israel A Nation

“having power with God” or “God's Fighter.”

I would like to make a statement to begin this chapter of the study of Israel a Nation by sharing this thought. The Arab Nations and some Gentile Nations want to exterminate the Jews from the face of the earth! This is why many do not want Israel to be recognized as a Nation. The Jewish Nation is hated by many and history proves my statement.

One cannot reject the Old Testament like so many have done. They're comment is “we do not live by the Old we live by the New.” You cannot reject or discount the authority of the Old Testament because it is historical, poetical, and prophetic. The books of the Old Testament are not fairy tales and myths. The Old Testament is truthful in its writings of the Hebrew Nation and if you reject the Old Testament history you are calling God a liar. This is why I can make such a statement. The Old Testament is the biblical (true) story of Israel- past, present, and future. There are 17 historical books in the Old Testament and they are reliable for historic veracity and should always be accepted and claimed as the truth. Jesus Christ even quoted verses and taught from the Old Testament, as did his disciples. The Ten Commandments are from the Old Testament, and there are other moral laws from the Old Testament that should be observed to this present day. The Old Testament laws such as for sacrificing of animals and Tabernacle laws, Tabernacle service laws for the high priests, and many rituals, regulations, obligations, traditions of laws were abolished because of the Lord Jesus Christ's substitutionary sacrifice for our sins on the cross. And that He became our High Priest not needing anymore earthly high priests. Read Hebrews in the New Testament chapters 7, 8, 9, 10 on this subject concerning the high priest and sacrificing of animals.

The main reason that God chose a race of people called the Hebrews was to represent Him here on earth to glorify Him among nations. There are 4 basic thoughts from the Old Testament.

1. God's promise to Abraham is that his seed founded the Hebrew Nation for the specific purpose of making a Messianic Nation to the World, that is, a nation through which Great Blessings would come to All Nations. Israel would produce the Messiah, humanity’s Savior and Lord. Romans 9:4- 5 “Who are Israelites; to whom pertaineth the adoption, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service of God, and the promises; Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.”

2. God's covenant with the Hebrew Nation was that if they would faithfully serve Him, they would prosper as a nation, if they would forsake Him, and serve Idols they would be destroyed as a Nation. All you have to do is read the Old Testament and look at history of what happen to the Jewish Nation over the years. All nations worshipped idols. There were gods everywhere, gods of sky, earth, sea, land, cities, country, mountains, valleys, male, female, and of families. Israel’s mission was to be a witness to the unity of God in the midst of universal idolatry. Deuteronomy 6:4 “Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God is one LORD:”

3. The Old Testament is an account of God's age long effort to establish, in a world of Idol Worshipping, the Idea that there was ONE God by over God's people forever. Israel was to illustrate to the nations the greater blessedness of serving the one true God. Deuteronomy 33:26 – 29 “There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before thee; and shall say, Destroy them. Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall
Happy art thou, O Israel: who is like unto thee, O people saved by the LORD, the shield of thy help, and who is the sword of thy excellency! and thine enemies shall be found liars unto thee; and thou shalt tread upon their high places.”

4. Israel was to receive and produce God’s divine revelation. Romans 3:1 – 2 “What advantage then hath the Jew? or what profit is there of circumcision? Much every way: chiefly, because that unto them were committed the oracles of God.”

When God’s Nation became a Great Nation, God chose One Family in the nation, out of the tribe of Judah the family of David, and began to build around that family His promises, that, out of that family there would come One Great King who would Himself personally Live forever and establish a Universal Kingdom of endless duration. The Hebrew Nation was founded that through them the Whole World should be blessed and that is why they are called the Messianic Nation. The Hebrew Nation would Bless the World through the family of David out of the tribe of Judah The Messianic Family. The way the Family would Bless the World would be through One Great King to be born in the Family. The Messiah the Lord Jesus Christ.

In founding the Hebrew Nation God’s Ultimate object was to bring Christ into the world. God's immediate object was to establish in a world of Idolatry as a background to the coming of Christ the Idea that there is one True Living God.

So does this mean that after Christ came into the World that the Nation of Israel should not exist? Should it mean that they should surrender land to Palestinians that do not have any right to this land in the first place? Should it mean that other Nations should dictate what land should be surrendered to the Palestinians? This is not their land. God gave it to the Hebrew’s. Some would say that the Palestinians were there first and it should be their land. I will later in this chapter explain this hoax about the Palestinians. By God's Divine Authority and His Sovereignty He gave the Hebrew's the land of Canaan.

I believe that Israel has the sole right to be recognized as a free Nation not to be governed by other Nations from the outside. Israel has the right to be a free Nation without the Palestinians terrorizing their country with suicide bombings claiming that it is their nation. Israel has the right to exercise self-defense in these terrorizing acts by military actions against those organizations that commit such crimes. I believe America should do business with Israel and protect them to the utmost, and help them in any way we can. Why do I believe this so persistently? Because what God said about the Nation of Israel to Abraham in Genesis 12:3 “And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee.” Nations better not battle against Israel!!!

If you read the Old Testament you will see the birth and an account of the Nation of Israel. In the next few verses I’m giving you, it will be the first mention of the land of Canaan which would eventually be promised to the Hebrew Nation.

Genesis 9:18 “And the sons of Noah, that went forth of the ark, were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth: and Ham is the father of Canaan.”

Genesis 9:25 - 27 “And he said, Cursed be Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren. And he said, Blessed be the LORD God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant. God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.” This is an amazing prophecy!! If you read Genesis 9 and 10 you see all the descendants of Ham, Japhetic, and Shem. The descendants of Ham were Canaanites, Jebusties, Amorites, Girgashites, Hivites, Sinites. Japhetic races (Gentile Nations) would have dominance of the world and be converted to the God of Shem, and the Shemite race (Hebrews) would preserve the knowledge of the one true God.

The word Hebrew is first mention in Genesis 14:13 “And there came one that had escaped, and told Abram the Hebrew.” This word Hebrew is derived and translated
correctly this way. “Abram, the Hebrew” ha Ibhri, from abar, “to cross over” or the one (Abraham) who crossed over. Abraham crossed over the Euphrates River. From that time forth the Nation of Israel would be called the Hebrew’s. Where did the Jewish name come from? Jew is a descendant from Judah. The word Jew is first read in the Bible in 2 Kings 25:25 “But it came to pass in the seventh month, that Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, of the seed royal, came, and ten men with him, and smote Gedaliah, that he died, and the Jews and the Chaldees that were with him at Mizpah.”

God’s Word of the Old Testament is inspired, infallible, and the final authority. In order to understand the birth of the great Hebrew Nation we must read God’s Word to see how and why He did this. Let us read all the following verses of God’s Word so we can understand what God is promising the Hebrew Nation. We will read the very first promise in these verses.

**Genesis 11:31 - 12:1 - 7** “And Terah took Abram his son, and Lot the son of Haran his son’s son, and Sarai his daughter in law, his son Abram’s wife; and they went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan; and they came unto Haran, and dwelt there. And the days of Terah were two hundred and five years: and Terah died in Haran. Now the LORD had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father’s house, unto a land that I will shew thee: And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: and I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed. So Abram departed, as the LORD had spoken unto him; and Lot went with him: and Abram was seventy and five years old when he departeth out of Haran. And Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother’s son, and all their substance that they had gathered, and the souls that they had gotten in Haran; and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan; and into the land of Canaan they came. And Abram passed through the land unto the place of Sichem, unto the plain of Moreh. And the Canaanite was then in the land. And the LORD appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there builded he an altar unto the LORD.” (This was around 2200 - 2000 B.C.)

**Genesis 13:14 - 18** “And the LORD said unto Abram, after that Lot was separated from him, Lift up now thine eyes, and look from the place where thou art northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward: For all the land which thou seest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed for ever. And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth: so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, then shall thy seed also be numbered. Arise, walk through the land in the length of it and in the breadth of it; for I will give it unto thee. Then Abram removed his tent, and came and dwelt in the plain of Mamre, which is in Hebron, and built there an altar unto the LORD.”

**Genesis 15:1 - 21** “After these things the word of the LORD came unto Abram in a vision, saying, Fear not, Abram: I am thy shield, and thy exceeding great reward. And Abram said, Lord GOD, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, and the steward of my house is this Eliezer of Damascus? And Abram said, Behold, to me thou hast given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir. And, behold, the word of the LORD came unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir. And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be. And he believed in the LORD; and he counted it to him for righteousness. And he said unto him, I am the LORD that brought thee out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give thee this land to inherit it. And he said, Lord GOD, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it? And he said unto him, Take me an heifer of three years old, and a she goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon. And he took unto him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against another: but the birds divided he not. And when the fowlis came
down upon the carcases, Abram drove them away. And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram; and, lo, an horror of great darkness fell upon him. And he said unto Abram, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land (Egypt) that is not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years; And also that nation, whom they shall serve, will I judge: and afterward shall they come out with great substance. And thou shalt go to thy fathers in peace; thou shalt be buried in a good old age. But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again: for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full. And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces. In the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates: (tribe out of Ishmaelites) and the Kenites, (tribe out of the Edomites out of Esau) and the Kadmonites, (sons of the east) And the Hittites, (tribe out of Canaanites out of Ham) and the Perizzites, (origin is unknown but could be out of the tribe of Canaanites) and the Rephaims, (could be a older aboriginal race. There name means spirit of the deceased or giant aborigines) And the Amorites, (a tribe out of the Canaanites out of Ham) and the Canaanites, (descendants of Ham) and the Girgashites, (tribe out of the Canaanites descendants of Ham) and the Jebusites.” (a tribe out of the Canaanites out of Ham.) I have not yet heard of any Palestinians as of yet.

Genesis 17:1 – 9 – 15 - 21 “And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the LORD appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect. And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly. And Abram fell on his face: and God talked with him, saying, As for me, behold, my covenant is with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations. Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be Abraham; (Abraham means “high father”) for a father of many nations have I made thee. And I will make thee exceeding fruitful, and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee. And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee. And God said unto Abraham, Thou shalt keep my covenant therefore, thou, and thy seed after thee in their generations. And God said unto Abraham, As for Sarai thy wife, thou shalt not call her name Sarai, but Sarah shall her name be. And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her: yea, I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations; kings of people shall be of her. Then Abraham fell upon his face, and laughed, and said in his heart, Shall a child be born unto him that is an hundred years old? and shall Sarah, that is ninety years old, bear? And Abraham said unto God, O that Ishmael might live before thee! And God said, Sarah thy wife shall bear thee a son indeed; and thou shalt call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him. And as for Ishmael, (Ishmaelites were peoples from Egypt to the Euphrates and perhaps to the Persian Gulf) I have heard thee: Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly; twelve princes shall he beget, and I will make him a great nation. But my covenant will I establish with Isaac, which Sarah shall bear unto thee at this set time in the next year. ”

As you read through Genesis, God keeps on promising the land of Canaan. Finally God says in Genesis 35:9 - 12 “And God appeared unto Jacob again, when he came out of Padan-aram, and blessed him. And God said unto him, Thy name is Jacob: thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name: and he called his name Israel. And God said unto him, I am God Almighty: be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come out of thy loins; And the
land which I gave Abraham and Isaac, to thee I will give it, and to thy seed after thee will I give the land.”

In Numbers 34:2 - 12 gives the borders of the land of Canaan which the Lord our God would give to the Hebrew Nation for an inheritance. “Command the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye come into the land of Canaan; (this is the land that shall fall unto you for an inheritance, even the land of Canaan with the coasts thereof.) Then your south quarter shall be from the wilderness of Zin along by the coast of Edom, and your south border shall be the outmost coast of the salt sea eastward: And your border shall turn from the south to the ascent of Akrabbim, and pass on to Zin: and the going forth thereof shall be from the south to Kadesh-barnea, and shall go on to Hazar-addar, and pass on to Azmon: And the border shall fetch a compass from Azmon unto the river of Egypt, and the goings out of it shall be at the sea. And as for the western border, ye shall even have the great sea for a border: this shall be your west border. And this shall be your north border: from the great sea ye shall point out for you mount Hor: From mount Hor ye shall point out your border unto the entrance of Hamath; and the goings forth of the border shall be to Zedad: And the border shall go on to Ziphron, and the goings out of it shall be at Hazar-enan: this shall be your north border. And ye shall point out your east border from Hazar-enan to Shepham: And the coast shall go down from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ain; and the border shall descend, and shall reach unto the side of the sea of Chinnereth eastward: And the border shall go down to Jordan, and the goings out of it shall be at the salt sea: this shall be your land with the coasts thereof round about.”

In the Book of Joshua from chapter 12 to 21:42 is the history of the Nation of Israel of the kings of the land who they conquered and what land was divided among the 12 tribes of Israel. In your reading of these chapters see if you read about any kings of the Palestinians? You will not find any kings, princes, armies or the nation of the Palestinians.

Then God said this in Joshua 21:43 - 45 “And the LORD gave unto Israel all the land which he sware to give unto their fathers; and they possessed it, and dwelt therein. And the LORD gave them rest round about, according to all that he sware unto their fathers: and there stood not a man of all their enemies before them; the LORD delivered all their enemies into their hand. There failed not ought of any good thing which the LORD had spoken unto the house of Israel; all came to pass.”

WHO ARE THE PALESTINIANS (22)

I would like to present God’s Word to you first before we start this section. The following verses from God’s Word are called “The Olivet Discourse” in which Jesus’ gives the prophetic future of Jerusalem and end times. I will now give you Jesus’ words from Luke 21:5 – 36 and please keep these verses in remembrance when reading the rest of this historical section. “And as some spake of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said, As for these things which ye behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down. And they asked him, saying, Master, but when shall these things be? and what sign will there be when these things shall come to pass? And he said, Take heed that ye be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and the time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them. But when ye shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified: for these things must first come to pass; but the end is not by and by. Then said he unto them, Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom:
And great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and famines, and pestilences; and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven. But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute you, delivering you up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name’s sake. And it shall turn to you for a testimony. Settle it therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist. And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolks, and friends; and some of you shall cause to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name’s sake. But there shall not an hair of your head perish. In your patience possess ye your souls. And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. Then let them which are in Judaea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter there into. For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; Men’s hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken. And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh. And he spake to them a parable; Behold the fig tree, and all the trees; When they now shoot forth, ye see and know of your own selves that summer is now nigh at hand. So likewise ye, when ye see these things come to pass, know ye that the kingdom of God is nigh at hand. Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled. Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares. For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.” What was the Savior saying? Simply, that the end draws near, the Jews would be scattered throughout the world and the city of Jerusalem would be controlled by Gentile and Arab powers until the time of His return. All the various Arab and Gentile groups—the Romans, the Persians, the Crusaders, the Egyptians, the Turks, and the English would control Jerusalem from A.D. 70 until May 1967. Keep your eyes fixed upon what is happening in the Middle East and the current world conditions because the end time is at hand.

The name or term “Palestine” as a geographical designation was most probably derived from an Egyptian group, prst (or plst) which migrated from the Delta region to southern Canaan at the beginning of the Proto-dynastic period (2900–2700 B.C.). Evidence of migrations from Egypt at this period have been furnished by excavations at Arad, Engedi, and elsewhere. The prst (spelled this way because there was no letter L in Egyptian) evidently gave their name to the area where they settled, which was known as the “land of the Philistines” in Abraham’s day (Gen.21:32 – 34). It was these same people with whom Isaac also had dealings (Gen. 26:1). (The New Ungers Bible Dictionary, pg. 953) Palestine as an official designation did not come into usage until the second century A.D. and note this, that archaeologists in there excavations have never found any culture of Palestinians anywhere in that region or anywhere else.

In 70 A.D. the Roman Empire marched through ancient Israel and destroyed the 2nd Jewish
Temple, slaughtering or driving out much of its Jewish population. Many Jews left on their own because conditions for life were made unbearable in many respects, yet thousands upon thousands stayed and rebelled on for centuries in order to once again rebuild a Jewish Nation in this Holy Land. Between 130 A.D. and 136 A.D. the Roman Emperor Hadrian in an attempt to obliterate and de-legitimize the Jewish presence in the Holy Land and all surviving traces of Jewish influence renamed Judea “Syria Palæstina” (the name Palestine has had an anti-Jewish meaning from the first.) refounded Jerusalem as a pagan city which he renamed “Aelia Capitolina.” Hadrian built a temple to Jupiter on the site of the former temple, and forbade Jewish observances such as circumcision, the Sabbath, and the annual festivals.

The word Philistine is found in the Bible 287 times. Here is the first mention of the Philistines in the Bible. Genesis 21:32 “Thus they made a covenant at Beer-sheba: then Abimelech rose up, and Phichol the chief captain of his host, and they returned into the land of the Philistines.” The word Palestine is found 1 time in the Bible, the word Palestina is found 3 times in the Bible. Palestine is mentioned in Joel 3:4 “Yea, and what have ye to do with me, O Tyre, and Zidon, (these 2 cities were in the region of Phoenicia in the Old Testament Canaan) and all the coasts of Palestine? will ye render me a recompence? and if ye recompence me, swiftly and speedily will I return your recompence upon your own head.” If you read Joel chapter 3 in its entirety you will see that this is the prophesy of the coming day of the Lord. The word Palestina in the A.V., is rendered in the R.V. "Philistia" (from which the name Palestina is derived) is found in Exodus 15:14 “The people shall hear, and be afraid: sorrow shall take hold on the inhabitants of Palestina” (Philistia R.V.). And there is more prophesy against Palestina in Isaiah 14:29, 31 “Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent. Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved: for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.” This prophecy is probably Sargon and Sennacherib, who completed the desolation of Philistia.

Very often one hears the revisionists and propagandists finding ancient historical links between the “Philistines” and the Arab “Palestinians.” There is no truth to this claim! The Philistines were Aegean Sea People maybe from Crete out of descendents from Egyptians and viewed by some scholars as Indo-Europeans. They were a non-Semitic people. They were one of a number of Sea Peoples who reached the eastern Mediterranean region approximately 1200 - 1100 B.C who conquered the Hittites and Phoenicians, settled ultimately in the coastal areas of southern Canaan and became known in the O. T. by the name of the land in which they were living. Some scholars say they were actually an amalgamation of various ethnic groups, primarily of Aegean and south-east European origin (Greece, Crete and Western Turkey) but surely not of Arabian origin! The Philistines settled ultimately in the coastal areas of southern Canaan and became known as Philistia. Philista was subsequently rendered “the Palaiistine in Greek, a form which Herodotus (fifth century B. C.) was apparently the first to use. The Philistines conquered the Hittites and Phoenicians. (The New Ungers Bible Dictionary pg. 953) The Philistines are distant descendents of Caphtorims who are distant descendents of Mizraim who is a descendant of Ham. These Philistines were not Arab, and neither was Goliath! The Arabs of “Palestine” are just “Arab.”

The ancient, native inhabitants of Palestine are long perished from the earth. Canaanites, and the Philistines all were dominated by the Israelites before 1060 B.C. most of these cultural identities dissolved completely by the neo-Babylonian age, or, the 6th century B.C. Arabs weren't even in Palestine until the mid-7th century A.D. over a thousand years later after Palestine's 1,300-year Jewish history. Arabs later living in Palestine never developed themselves or the land, but remained nomadic and quasi-primitive. Even the word “Palestine” has no
meaning in Arabic, every word in Arabic has some meaning deriving from the Koran, but the word “Palestine” does not.

There is a preliminary historical fact that must be established. There has never been a civilization or a nation referred to as “Palestine” and the very notion of a “Palestinian Arab nation” having ancient attachments to the Holy Land going back to time recorded is one of the biggest hoaxes ever perpetrated upon the world! There is not, nor has there ever been, a distinct “Palestinian” culture or language. Further, there has never been a Palestinian state governed BY Arab Palestinians in history, nor was there ever a serious Arab Palestinian national movement until 1964. Three years BEFORE the Arabs of “Palestine” lost the West Bank [Judea and Samaria] and Gaza as a result of the 1967 Six-Day War (which the Arabs started). The so-called Arab “Palestinians” are a manufactured people, a people with no history and no authenticity, whose sole purpose for existence is to destroy the Jewish State! Let me just add here that the so-called former leader of the “Palestinian” people, Yasser Arafat, was an EGYPTIAN who died just recently on November 11, 2004. What is very fascinating is that from the Word of God we can see a sect of people that is mentioned in Genesis 16:5 – 12 that is very relevant to make the case that the Palestinian people are an Arabic sect of people. Chapter 16 concerns Sari Abram’s wife and Hagar her maid. “And Sarai said unto Abram, My wrong be upon thee: I have given my maid into thy bosom; and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes: the LORD judge between me and thee. But Abram said unto Sarai, Behold, thy maid is in thy hand; do to her as it pleaseth thee. And when Sarai dealt hardly with her, she fled from her face. And the angel of the LORD found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur. And he said, Hagar, Sarai’s maid, whence camest thou? and whither wilt thou go? And she said, I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai. And the angel of the LORD said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands. And the angel of the LORD said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. And the angel of the LORD said unto her, Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the LORD hath heard thy affliction. And he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man’s hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren. And she called the name of the LORD that spake unto her, Thou God seest me: for she said, Have I also here looked after him that seeth me? Wherefore the well was called Beer-lahai-roi; behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered. And Hagar bare Abram a son: and Abram called his son’s name, which Hagar bare, Ishmael. And Abram was fourscore and six years old, when Hagar bare Ishmael to Abram.” The Ishmaelites is the general name given for all the Abrahamic peoples of Egypt to the Euphrates and perhaps to the Persian Gulf, their headquarters being in Arabia. Muhammad claimed descent from Ishmael. Although in the confusion of the Arab genealogies the names are lost beyond the twenty-first generation before the prophet, the claim is probable enough, since the pre-Muhammadan law of blood revenge, which required everyone to know his ancestors for four generations back, would prevent all confusion in regard to race. And, after making due allowance of mixture with Joktanites and Keturahites, we may fairly regard the Arabs are essentially an Ishmaelite race. (The New Ungers Bible Dictionary pg. 633,634). The media nor politicians would never concur with these statements even though they are true.

Israel first became a nation in 1312 B.C two thousand years before the rise of Islam! Seven hundred and twenty-six years later in 586 B.C these first ancient Jews in the Land of Israel [Judea] were overrun and Israel's First Jewish Temple (on Jerusalem's Old City Temple Mount) was destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar, king of ancient Babylon. Many of the Jews were killed or expelled; however many were allowed to remain. These Jews along with their descendants and
other Jews who would resettle over the next 500 years, rebuilt the Nation of Israel and also a Second Temple in Jerusalem upon the Temple Mount. Since the Jewish conquest in 1272 B.C. the Jews have had dominion over the land for 1000 years. Thus the claim that Jews suddenly appeared fifty years ago right after the Holocaust and drove out the Arabs is preposterous!

Over 3250 years, various Peoples, Religions and Empires marched through Jerusalem, Israel’s ancient capital. The region was successively ruled by the Hebrews (Jews), Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, Greeks, Maccabees, Romans, Byzantines, Arabs, Egyptians, the Crusaders, Mamelukes, the Turks (who indifferently governed the backward, neglected territory from the 16th century until the British drove them out during World War I) and then once again by the Jews in 1948. None bothered, nor were they in the least bit inclined, to build a Nation of their own, EXCEPT the Jews! I would like to add that no other empire named Jerusalem as their own capital, Except the Jews, for 3,300 years Jerusalem has been their capital.

It must be noted that in 636 A.D when the Arab marauders came to the land and uprooted even more of its Jews, they did not form any Arab nation there, nor did they make Jerusalem their capital, or did there conquest only last 22 years. Certainly this was not a “Palestinian” nation. These people were simply “Arabs” who, as did others before them, moved into a geopolitical area called “Palestine!” And remember this one fact! It was not the Jews who “usurped” (a favorite word from the Arab propagandists) the land from the Arabs. If anything, it was the Arabs in 636 A.D. who overran and stole it from the Jews!

No nation, other than the ancient nation of Israel and later again in 1948 with the rebirth of the 2nd Nation of Israel, has ever ruled as a sovereign national entity on this land. A mighty Jewish empire extended over this entire area before the Arabs, before their Islam were even born! The Jewish People have one of the most legitimate Birth Certificates of any nations in the world. Every time there is an archaeological dig in Israel, it does nothing but support the fact that the Jewish People have had a presence there for well over 3,000 years. The coins, the pottery, the cities, the ancient text all support this claim. Yes, other peoples have passed through, but there is no mistaking the fact that Jews have always had a continual presence in that land for over 3,000 years. This predates and certain dwarfs any claims that other peoples in the regions may have. The ancient Philistines are extinct. Many other ancient peoples are extinct. They do not have the unbroken line to this date that the Jews have. And if you want to talk religion, fine. God GAVE the Land of Israel to the Jewish People. And God does nothing by accident!

The return to Zion (the land of Israel) was never devoid of Jews, although at times she numbered only in the tens of thousands. This was because the land was virtually uninhabitable when the Jews once again began their God-given right AND duty to return to the land of their forefathers (the Zionist Movement) in the 1880s.

The Jews did not displace anyone, because very few of the people who were there actually owned the land. Most were absentee owners residing elsewhere. Another fact hardly mentioned by the “new historians” is that the arriving Jews never threw anyone off any land. All land was purchased legally from the original owners whether they be from the “Palestine” itself or elsewhere. Furthermore, top dollar was paid for this land which, in many cases, was uninhabited and hardly more than swamp land and rocky terrain. Only about 120,000 Arabs resided in an area that now comprises the State of Israel, Jordan and the so-called “West Bank” [Judea and Samaria] in between. By 1890, the number of Jews who had settled in Palestine reached 50,000 and, by 1907, numbered 100,000. In Jerusalem alone the Jews numbered more than 25,000, out of a total population in the city of only 40,000 Jews, Christians and Arabs. The Arabs did, however, constitute a majority over the sparsely populated countryside abutting Jerusalem.
In the 1880s, Palestine's early Jewish Zionists were idealistic pioneers who arrived in pre-state Israel with every intention of living in peace alongside their Arab neighbors and upgrading the quality of life for all of the land's inhabitants. These pre-Israel Zionists (and later, Israelis) had tried to develop peacefully for the dual benefit of Jews and Arabs in the land. But the Arab leadership always, starting in the earliest days, took the low road of insisting that the only solution was for the Jews to get out, even if that meant continued poverty and stagnation. When Arab demands were not met, they always resorted to violence, in which they are still doing today, resorting to violence.

At the beginning of the 20th century, there were practically no Arabs in the Holy Land. Towards the end of the First World War, in 1917, the British army under General Allenby liberated Jerusalem and Palestine from Turks, the only time in its three thousand year history that Jerusalem was captured without a shot being fired. Allenby, a Bible-believing Christian, dismounted his horse and entered Jerusalem on foot, anxious to distinguish his entry from that of Jesus nineteen centuries earlier. The establishment of the British League of Nations Mandate over Palestine (1920-48) brought to an end 401 years of Ottoman Turkish misrule and neglect with only about 5000 Arabs residing there. The Arabs who now claim to be natives of the Holy Land have migrated to Palestine after 1918, from neighboring Arab countries, predominantly from areas now known as Jordan, Syria, Lebanon, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, and Iraq. None of these countries existed as nations prior to 1913. They were nothing but a disorganized collection of tribes, constantly terrorizing each other, trying to seize land from their neighbors. Unfortunately, those Arab immigrants imported into the Holy Land their age-old culture of terrorizing neighbors to seize land. Many of them were social outcasts and criminals who could not find jobs in their own countries so they searched for their luck elsewhere. They were accepted by the British regime as a source of cheap labor and were allowed to settle on unoccupied Jewish land in Palestine. This was a big mistake, they should of expelled them.

The vast majority of Arabs came to the area after these early Zionist pioneers began draining the malaria-infested swamps and rebuilding the land! In doing so, these Jews created the economic opportunities and medical availabilities, which attracted still more Arabs from both surrounding territories and far-away lands! In fact, over 90% of the Arabs migrated there within the last one hundred years. Most of the so-called “Palestinians” are in fact interlopers and squatters from Syria, Jordan, Egypt, Iraq and others places mostly in the 1920s and 1930s who simply took possession of pieces of land. Well, so much for their unfounded claims that they have been there since “time immemorial!” The real problem facing those Arabs today is not the lack of a homeland. The historical root-cause of their problem and frustration is the fact that the countries they came from have not agreed to accept them back in. This is why so many of them live, up until today, in refugee camps, in neighboring Arab countries, lacking fundamental civil rights. In their frustration they feel that the only hope and choice they have is to try and steal someone else's country.

Yet while the returning Jews were highly motivated to restore the land, the Arabs seethed with envy and hatred because they lacked both the leadership to inspire or motivate them for they were, in fact, historical strangers to this land! Unlike the Jews, those Arabs who immigrated there had no ancient attachments to or historical memories of this homeland this ancient Land of the Jew.

There was no “Arab Palestinian” history before the Arabs manufactured one shortly after 1948, and then especially after the June 1967 Arab-Israeli War! In an interview with the Dutch newspaper “Trau” (March 31, 1977), PLO executive committee member Zahir Muhsein said, “The Palestinian people does not exist. The creation of a Palestinian state is only a means for continuing our struggle against the state of Israel for our Arab unity.” In reality today there is no difference between Jordanians, Palestinians, Syrians and Lebanese. Only for political and tactical reasons do we speak today about the existence of a Palestinian people, since Arab
national interests demand that we affirm the existence of a distinct “Palestinian people” to oppose Zionism.” It is also been a “conceptual” war for ownership of the term “Palestinian” which has been transferred over to the Arabs whereas, before 1967, “Palestine” has always been synonymous with Eretz Israel and the Land of Israel.

Archeological sites to this very day continue to yield artifacts with Hebrew writing, not some fictitious “Palestinian” or Arabic text! The so-called “Palestinian” Arabs were simply then, as they are now, Arabs no different culturally, historically or ethnically from other Arabs living in any of the 24 Arab countries from which they emigrated. The suggestion that the “Palestinians” are some sub-group of Arabs with their own unique identity is pure fiction! Great propaganda, but still purification! And had not the Arabs continued to brainwash generation upon generation into believing this HISTORICAL HOGWASH about some ancient “Arab Palestinian” ties to the Holy Land, most could have gotten themselves a real life by now with much less bloodshed and suffering for everyone concerned!

Let us review the brief history of Israel. There are 24 Arab nations and they have 640 times more land mass than Israel. The Arab countries take up 99 1/2 % of the Middle East while Israel takes up 1/2 % of the 1 %. From 1517 to 1917 the Turks ruled the region of Palestine and also supported the Germans in World War 1. The British defeated the Turks the Ottoman Empire in 1917. In 1917 the Sykes Picott Agreement assigned Lebanon and Syria to France and Palestine which is Jordon, Palestine, Israel of today to Great Britain, this British mandate was to establish a national home for the Jewish people. In 1923 Britain divided Palestine into 2 administrative districts the Jews residing on the west side of the Jordon River, in doing this the British cut off 75 % of the original proposed Jewish Palestinian homeland forming an Arab Palestinian state Trans Jordan.

On Nov. 29 1947, the UN created a Palestinian Arab and Jewish State. Israel has their Independence and the Mufti of Jerusalem Haj Amin Al Husseini declares a holy war calling out that all Jews should be killed. On May 15, 1948, Lebanon, Syria, Jordan, Egypt, Saudi Arabia, Iraq and Yemen attacked Israel and Israel survived and defended their Independence. When the War ended 60,000 Jews from 9 Arab countries, Morocco, Tunisia, Syria, Iraq, Algeria, Libya, Egypt, Yemen, and Arden fled back to Israel. Over 70,000 Arabs fled Israel under the encouragement from other Arab leaders.

In 1949 Israel signed an armistice agreement with Lebanon, Egypt, Syria, and Jordan. NO attempts were ever made by the Arabs to solve the refugee problems in Israel. The Arab nations did not take care of the refugee problems because it would leave them political pawns in Israel.

On May 26, 1967, President Nasser of Egypt declared war on Israel to destroy them. Egypt, Syria, Jordan, Iraq, and Saudi Arabia came against Israel and again it defended its existence.

In Sept. 1967 a resolution was adopted at the Arab summit. There would be no peace, recognition, or negotiations with Israel. On Oct. 6, 1973, Egypt and Syria attacked Israel and once again Israel defends its existence.

From 1948 – 1967 Arab Palestinians were governed by Jordan and Egypt and never demanded Independence from them.

The Palestine Liberation Organization’s (PLO) was formed in 1964 three years before the West Bank, Gaza Strip were captured by Israel during the 1967 war and its primary goal was to destroy Israel. Arab refugees in Israel began identifying themselves as part of a Palestinian people in 1967, two decades after the establishment of the modern State of Israel. After the Arabs started and lost the 1967 Arab-Israeli war, their goal became two-tracked: Either (1) destroy Israel outright (the same pre 1967 goal) or (2) the creation of an Arab Palestinian state to be used as a launching pad from which to destroy Israel.

This was a brief history of what has taken place during the early years of Israel dealing with
the so-called Palestinians. Many peace talks have taken place since 1967 till now and the Arabs continue to use terrorism through the Hamas terrorist group and other terrorist groups.

PEACE IS IMPOSSIBLE

From the moment the Jewish People re-established sovereignty in their ancient homeland, they sought genuine peace with all of their neighbors. Unfortunately, their neighbors did not wish to share a peaceful existence with them. The Arab campaign against Israel is rooted not in any negotiable grievances but in a basic opposition to the very existence of Jewish sovereignty in what they perceive as THEIR Middle East! The ultimate intent of the Arabs is to separate out a Jewish history from “Palestine” and then, to separate Israel from the face of the Earth. It's really that simple! There will never be TRUE PEACE in Israel until the Lord Jesus Christ comes back to reign upon His throne in Jerusalem for 1000 years. The book of Revelation will give you more information on the future Israel. I will close this final chapter in giving you a few verses to shed some light of what is going to happen in the near future. Revelation 19:1 – 21, 20:1 – 4

“And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God: For true and righteous are his judgments: for he hath judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of his servants at her hand. And again they said, Alleluia. And her smoke rose up for ever and ever. And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia. And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great. And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth. Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God. And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy. And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he tredeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS. And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God; That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great. And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles
before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone. And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which sword proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh. And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.” Finally peace for Israel and those that will reign with Him.

Then after that 1,000 year reign with Christ then this is what is going to happen and we can read it in Revelation 20:5 – 22:20 “But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years. And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: (This is Jerusalem in Israel) and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night forever and ever. And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire (these are they were not born again). And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful. And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely. He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have
their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death. And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb’s wife. And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, Having the glory of God: and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal; And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: On the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof: And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel. And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcodony; the fourth, an emerald; The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, an achlidos; the eleventh, an amethyst. And the twelve gates were twelve pearls: every several gate was one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass. And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it. And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof. And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it. And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb’s book of life. And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever. And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book. And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things. Then saith he unto me, See thou do it not: for I am thy fellow-servant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God. And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand. He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still. And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers,
idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie. I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star. And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely. For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book. He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

There has been volume of books wrote about these few chapters that you just read. But the main essence of what you read about is that you know the end. You know what is going to happen to Israel, born again believes, Satan, his demons and the unsaved. It is a tragedy that we do not share Christ with others more knowing the end that is to come that they could have eternal life of what God has promised. I am fully persuaded of the promises of God and hope that you can be also.
CHAPTER 24

THE INVITATION

The following are two Gospel handout pamphlets more commonly known as a Gospel “tract” which I wrote to help bring forth the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

For you that are reading this if you have never been born again, I invite you to come to the knowledge of being born again which I touched on throughout this book. Come as you are because the invitation does not always call. This might be the last time the Holy Spirit invites you to come to the Savior. Read through this chapter and reason with yourself and all that has been written in this book to know that you need Christ and only Him to enter the Kingdom of Heaven.

You that have been born again, you are welcome to copy this section in its entirety to handout to as many you can. I do request you do not sell these in any way for profit. Give them out to others for free as I have.

ARE YOU A GOOD PERSON?

By Rodney Houle

ALMOST EVERYONE THINKS THEY ARE A GOOD PERSON. BUT ARE YOU A GOOD ENOUGH PERSON TO GO TO HEAVEN IF YOU DIED RIGHT NOW?? HOW WOULD YOU KNOW?

I can explain to you how you can know for sure that if you died today you would go to Heaven.

The way to find out is to ask yourself if you have obeyed the 10 commandments. Most people say that they have broken a few but nothing to serious like murder. But let’s go through them and see how you do.

1. “You shall not have any gods before Me.” Well if you would be honest, you have failed to put God first in your life. Jesus said that we ought to love God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. Most likely you have failed to do this.

2. “You shall not make for yourself any idol.” Who is God to you? Is he only a god of love and mercy and would never judge anyone or cast anyone into hell. If that is your god then you are right. Your god couldn’t cast anyone into hell because he doesn’t exist. He is a figment of your imagination. You have created a god in your own mind that you are comfortable with. This is Idolatry. Do you put your job or money before God? If you have this is Idolatry. The Bible warns that all idolaters will not go to heaven.

3. “You shall not take the name of God in vain.” Have you ever used God’s name as a curse word? If you have used the name of God who created you and used it as a filthy four-letter word you are blasphemer. The Bible says that “God will not hold him guiltless who takes the name of the Lord in vain.”

4. “Remember the Sabbath to keep it Holy.” Be honest about this. Have you set aside one day out of seven for the Lord?

5. “Honor your Father and your Mother.” Well, just remember your teen years and that should remind you of some of the times that you disobeyed God in not honoring your parents. Your past sin’s are still there and they have not disappeared in thin air.

6. “You shall not murder.” Well did you know that you don’t have to kill someone to be a murderer? 1John 3:15 “He who hates his brother is a murderer.” You violate God’s law by your attitude and intent in your heart. Also Read Matt 5:22.
7. **“You shall not commit adultery.”** If you read Matt. 5:28 you will read that you can commit adultery by lusting after a woman in your heart. The Bible says that all adulterers and fornicators (those who have sex before marriage) will not inherit the kingdom of Heaven. Women can commit this sin by dressing ungodly also.

8. **“You shall not steal.”** Have you ever stolen something even if it was a small thing? How about stealing time at work? If you have that makes you a thief. A thief will not enter Heaven.

9. **“You shall not lie.”** Have you ever told a lie? If you are honest you know you have. Then that makes you a liar. You may think deceitfulness is not a serious sin but God does. A liar shall not inherit the Kingdom of God.

10. **“You shall not covet.”** This means we should never desire anything that belongs to another person. Have you had a desire for something that belonged to another person? The Bible says that a covetous person will not enter Heaven.

   Well how did you do? If you are honest you know you have broken God’s Law. The Ten Commandments expresses the Righteous will of God for mankind. Breaking God’s Law shows you that you are sinner.

   There is not a person on this earth that has kept all of the 10 commandments. Oh! Maybe you can say that you have only broken one of the 10 commandments. Well the Bible says in James 2:10 *“For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all.”* Or maybe you are one that says I have not broken any of the commandments. Well the Bible says in 1John 1:8 *“If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.”* We must admit that we are sinners because the Bible says so in Romans 3:23 *“For all have sinned and come short of the Glory of God.”* The glory of God is His Holy, Righteous Standard which is the 10 Commandments.

   How did you become a sinner? What is the price for sin? Romans 5:12 *“Wherefore, as by one man (Adam and Eve disobeyed God) sin entered into the world, and death by sin: and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.”* The price for sin is death in hell for eternity. Revelation 21:8 *“But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the SECOND DEATH.”* This is Hell! Sin has separated you from God. Ephesians 5:5, 6 *“For this you know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of God. Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience.”*

   The wrath of God abides on all sinners who have not repented for there sins. You need to REPENT because you have broken God’s Holy Law. Change your mind about yourself and read the following.

   I have good news. Romans 5:8 *“But God commendeth His love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, CHRIST died for us.”* God loves you very much. His blood that He shed for you cleanse you from all sin. Jesus Christ died and was buried but arose the third day to show He conquered sin and death.

   He has made away for you to escape this judgment upon sin. He sent His Son Jesus Christ to be your substitute for sin on the cross and pay the price for sin that you deserved. All your sin was placed on Christ and He bled and died to satisfy God’s judgment upon sin. God offers you eternal life. Romans 6:23 *“For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.”* Eternal life is a GIFT. You cannot earn it. In fact you cannot do one thing to get it, accept to receive it. You must receive Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior. Romans 10:9 *“That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God has raised Him from the dead, THOU SHALT BE SAVED.”*
“Just as I am, without on plea, but that Thy blood was shed for me, And that Thou bidd’st me to come to Thee, O Lamb of God, I come, I come. Just as I am and waiting not, to rid my soul of one dark blot, To Thee, whose blood can cleanse each spot, O Lamb of God, I come, I come.” That song was from the book “Inspiring Hymns” “Just As I Am” number 198, by Charlotte Elliott. Why don’t you come to the Savior today and pray this prayer with me from your heart.

“Dear God, I confess that I am a sinner and have sinned against you a Holy God. I Repent. I change my mind about myself; I have broken your Law. I am truly sorry for all my sins and will turn from my sins with your help. Right now the best I know how I confess with my mouth from my heart that Jesus is the Son of God, He is Lord, and I believe He bled and died in my place for my sins and arose from the dead. I ask you now Lord Jesus to come into my heart, I accept you as my Lord and Savior. In Jesus’ name I pray. Amen.”

If you prayed this prayer seek a bible believing church that PREACHES THE BIBLE and believes the doctrines that you have read in this book. Go back to the end of chapter 13 and look at the section

“Check guide for a good bible church” and make it a guide to select a church that follows the 22 statements mentioned.
WILL YOU BELIEVE MAN or IN YOURSELF or BELIEVE GOD HOW HE WILL JUDGE THE WORLD? Romans 3:4 God forbid: yea, let God be true, but every man a liar. Who are you going to believe?

HOW WILL GOD JUDGE THE WORLD? and WHY DOES HE WANT MAN TO REPENT?
Acts 17:30, 31 And the times of this ignorance God winked (overlooked) at; but now commandeth all men everywhere to repent: Because he (God) hath appointed a day, in the which he (God) will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he (Jesus Christ) hath ordained; whereof he (God) hath given assurance unto all men, in that he (God) hath raised him (Christ) from the dead.

GOD IS GOING TO JUDGE THE WORLD IN RIGHTEOUSNESS AND THAT’S WHY YOU NEED TO REPENT! Are you righteous? Do you think you are a good person?

WHY DO YOU NEED TO REPENT? 2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

Do you think you are going to perish? You don’t do you? You will, if you do not obey the scriptures of what YOU must do. What saith the scriptures? GOD DOES NOT WANT ANY TO PERISH!

WHAT DO I HAVE TO REPENT OF?
Acts 3:19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out.
You have to repent of your sins!

WHO SAYS I AM A SINNER? HOW IS THAT? YOU ARE IN ADAM!! You are a sinner and condemned! Romans 5:12 Wherefore, as by one man (Adam)sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men(that means you), for that all have sinned (that means you). Romans 5:15 For if through the offence of one (Adam) many be dead (that means you). Romans 5:16 for the judgment was by one (Adam) to condemnation (you are condemned in Adam). Romans 5:17 For if by one man's (Adam) offence death reigned by one. Romans 5:18 Therefore as by the offence of one (Adam) judgment came upon all men (upon you) to condemnation. Romans 5:19 For as by one man's (Adam) disobedience many were made sinners (that means you). Romans 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one. Romans 3:12 There is none that doeth good, no, not one. Romans 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God. Ecclesiastes 7:20 For there is not a just man upon earth, that doeth good, and sinneth
DO YOU KNOW THE PENALTY OF SIN? Romans 6:23 For the wages of sin is death. Romans 5:12 Wherefore, as by one man (Adam)sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men (that means you), for that all have sinned (that means you). Galatians 5:19 - 21 Now the works of the flesh (breaking of God’s Law) are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. Revelation 21:8 But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death. DID YOU KNOW THAT THE 10 COMMANDMENTS THE LAW OF GOD SHOWS YOU ARE A SINNER?

YOU DON’T BELIEVE YOU ARE A SINNER OR CONDEMNED! YOU THINK YOU ARE A PRETTY GOOD PERSON! YOU THINK IF YOU CAN KEEP THE COMMANDMENTS YOU WILL BE ALRIGHT. CAN YOU NAME ALL OF THE 10 COMMANDMENTS? Romans 3:19 – 20 Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God. Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin. Romans 7:7 What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet. 1 John 3:4 Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law. James 2:9, 10 convinced of the law as transgressors. For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. Romans 7:13 that sin by the commandment might become exceeding sinful. Galatians 3:24 Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith. The Law was never intended to be the Savior for mankind or to give forgiveness, a demonstration of love and nothing to do with salvation. Remember that!

WHAT DOES THE LAW DO? IT IS OUR SCHOOLMASTER (TEACHER, TUTOR) TO SHOW US WE ARE SINNERS! TO SHOW US WE ARE ALL GUILTY! TO BRING US UNTO CHRIST!! TO REPENT AND PUT FAITH IN CHRIST THE SAVIOR!

You probably still think God would not send you to hell. You still think you have done some good deeds in your life and God will weigh your good deeds over the bad things you’ve done. You think if you keep the commandments, the Golden Rule, trust in your baptism, Lord’s Supper
(communion) your church denomination, affiliation, give money to charity and church will help you when you meet death. You think everything you have done is alright in God’s eyes.

Well my friend, you think all these things will save you in the end but it will be the very things you trusted in that will not help you in the least in the end. 

Romans 10:2 - 4 For I bear them (you) record that they (you) have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. For they (you) being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish (your own) their own righteousness, (you) have not submitted (yourself) themselves unto the righteousness of God. For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone that believeth. Romans 3:21 - 22, 28 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe. Therefore we conclude (conclusive evidence) that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. Galatians 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. 

Ephesians 2:8, 9 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast. Romans 4:2, 3 For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Romans 4:5 But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. Romans 10:9-13 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

REASON WITH ME!! WHAT SAITH THE SCRIPTURE? WILL YOU BELIEVE GOD OR BELIEVE IN YOURSELF? DON’T TRUST YOURSELF BECAUSE I HAVE ALREADY SHOWED YOU WHAT YOU WERE. Jeremiah 17:9 The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? Psalms 14:2, 3 The LORD looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, and seek God. They are all gone aside, they are all together become filthy: there is none that doeth good, no, not one. Psalms 39:5 verily, every man at his best state, is altogether vanity. Psalms 58:3 The wicked are estranged from the womb: they go astray as soon as they be born, speaking lies. 

SO I WOULD NOT TRUST YOUR OWN HEART MY FRIEND! EVERY MOUTH MUST BE STOPPED FROM JUSTIFYING THEMSELEVES. Romans 2:1 Therefore thou art inexcusable, O man.

YOU NEED TO REPENT!

WHAT DOES REPENT MEAN? Change your mind about yourself. Admit you are a sinner breaking God’s Law. Admit you want to change your attitude, desires and actions. Change your Feeling about your sins. Admit you have sinned against a Holy, Righteous God. Hate your sinfulness! Change your Purpose. Confess your sins to God, Turn to God for help in your life, and forsake your sinful life and want to live a Christ like life.
THE RIGHTEOUSNESS OF GOD IS CHRIST! YOU NEED CHRIST’S RIGHTEOUSNESS TO BE SAVED! Proverbs 11:4 Riches profit not in the day of wrath: but righteousness delivereth from death. 2 Corinthians 5:21 FOR HE (God) HATH MADE HIM (Jesus Christ) TO BE SIN FOR US (you), WHO (Jesus Christ) KNEW NO SIN; THAT WE MIGHT BE MADE THE RIGHTEOUSNESS OF GOD IN HIM. 1 Corinthians 1:30 But of him (God) are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption. Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone that believeth. Romans 5:8 - 21 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, we were yet sinners Christ died for us. Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him. For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life. And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement. Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam’s transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come. But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification. For if by one man’s offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.) Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life. For as by one man’s disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous. Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound: That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord. John 3:16 - 18 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. John 8:24 I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins. You do not have to die in your sins. But you don’t think you have to do WHAT SAITH THE SCRIPTURES. Change your mind today!

WHY DON’T YOU DO THIS TODAY! IT HAS TO COME FROM THE HEART! REPENT AND TRUST IN THE LORD JESUS CHRIST AND RECEIVE HIS RIGHTEOUSNESS.

You can pray this prayer or pray your own prayer. This is between you and God. It must come from the heart.

Dear God, I confess and admit that I am a sinner. I have sinned against you. I am sorry for all my sins and repent. I change my mind about myself and turn to you for your help in my life. I confess with my heart that Jesus is the Son of God and that He shed His blood and died on the cross for my sins and arose from the dead. I believe and claim all the truths of Bible of who Christ is and what He did. I ask you right now with my heart to become my only personal Savior. I trust in nothing else to save me but only you.

Thank you for saving me and I trust you and depend upon you to help me to forsake my sinful life and live for you. In Jesus Name I pray. Amen.
If you prayed this prayer seek a bible believing church that PREACHES THE BIBLE and
believes the doctrines that you have read in this book. Go back to the end of chapter 13 and look
at the section “Check guide for a good bible church” and make it a guide to select a church that
follows the 22 statements mentioned.
The following is a few poems I wrote shortly after I was born again. You are welcomed to copy this and share it with others to bring them to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ.

A Whisper in the Wind
by Rodney Houle

As I wandered in life, I came upon a hill. As I stood on the hill, I saw the blood stained cross that gave me a chill. Then I heard a whisper in the wind, “A man named Jesus came down from heaven to shed His blood and die, For it was on that cross that Jesus paid for your sin, for the wages of sin is death and in Adam you stand condemned, That's why Jesus said you must be born again,” said the whisper in the wind.

I said to the whisper in the wind how can this be? Then I heard a whisper in the wind, “Repent for your sins and believe on Jesus and receive Him as your Savior and then you will see, Come over here and see where He laid,” said the whisper in the wind,

As I walked down the hill I came to a tomb convicted of my sin. Then I heard a whisper in the wind, “He is alive for he has risen, Here is where Jesus conquered death and sin,” said the whisper in the wind.

Where is He now I asked with my heart that I might know Him. Then I heard a whisper in the wind, “He stands at the door of your heart with a knock, Oh won't you let Him in, Invite Him in and He will change your life, for he will forgive you of your sins and give you eternal life,” said the whisper in the wind.

So I bowed my head and repented of my sin, and believed He died and arose for me and asked Him to come in.

As I looked toward heaven, with tears in my eyes, I said, thank you for the forgiveness of sin. Then from within, a voice from the whisper of the wind, “I am the Spirit of Christ that you asked to come in, now you are born again,” said the whisper in the wind.

Oh whisper in the wind I said, now how do I stand before God in the end, then from within a voice from the whisper in the wind, “Free of guilt and the penalty of sin, forgiven, no more condemned,” said the whisper in the wind.
The Christmas Tree
By Rodney Houle

OH Christmas tree you bring to mind things by faith I see,
Christ Jesus was made for me a curse of sin upon the tree.
Your form is like a finger, oh Christmas tree, it points me to the heavens,
For it was on the cross that Jesus would die who came from the heavens.

Your needles remind me of the crown of thorns,
Forced on the head of Jesus, the child of Christmas morn.

You bear the name evergreen, your color always lasting
Reminding me of my faith in Christ who gives me life everlasting.

Oh Christmas tree when decorated in colors,
You help me to remember the many promises that Christ offers.

The red that covers you Oh Christmas tree,
Brings to mind Christ's blood that was shed for me.

The blue that hangs upon your boughs makes me want to sing,
Because it is Christ who is my Heavenly King.

With white lights like snow draped upon you, you look so pure and stainless,
And I think of Christ who is so Pure, Holy and Sinless.

The tinsel and lights on you so shiny and bright,
Reminds me it is Christ who came to be my light.

Dressed in green Oh Christmas tree you have so much life,
Oh may I say because of Christ I have abundant life.

Oh Christmas tree your yellows boldly shine like a traffic light,
Reminds me with caution I do not want a worldly site,

Oh the worldly site is not what I want to be about,
I'll continue to share the love of Christ and not let my light go out.
The resources used in writing this Book

I do want to mention that much of my resource came through my schooling from Source of Light Ministries. The Source of Light Ministries studies were the basic doctrinal truths which were, Faith, Repentance, Justification, Sanctification, Regeneration, Adoption, Glorification, Prayer and God’s Delegated Authority. The studies were used in this book for educational purposes only. I completed all the basic doctrinal courses of the Bible with certificates of authenticity. I also did my studies under Evangelical Training Association of Christian Ethics in a Postmodern World by James P. Eckman, Ph. D. which were the Cultural Issues, Abortion, Homosexuality, Death penalty, and Euthanasia these studies were used in the book for educational purposes only. The courses from the Scripture Workbook by Gary F. Zeolla that I completed were used for the Scripture source for some of the contents in the book.

Extensive resource research came out of The Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words by W. E. Vine, The New Ungers Bible Dictionary, “Defending Your Faith” by Dan Story, Two articles by David N. Menton Ph. D. “Can Evolution Produce an Eye? Not a Chance!” and “Climbing the "Ladder of Life" In the Grand Canyon,” Halley's Bible Handbook, “The Case For Christ” by Lee Strobel and “The Way of the Master” by Ray Comfort. Some of the songs used in this book were all from the “Inspiring Hymnal” book with the author unknown. All the known authors of each book and articles have a sound doctrine in the Gospel of the Lord Jesus Christ. All scripture used in this book was from the King James Version. I also did an extensive research on the Internet as well from different Fundamental Christian Web sites and other web sites as well.
ATTRIBUTED NOTES:

2. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 3, pg. 62, 63
3. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 1, pg. 24, 25
6. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 12, pg. 206
7. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 11, pg. 201
8. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Conclusion: The Verdict of History, pg. 263
9. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 13, pg. 240
10. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 4, pg. 89
11. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 4, pg. 82
12. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 6, pg. 125
13. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Conclusion: The Verdict of History, pg. 264, 265
14. Facts, Faith, Feelings, is God Order by Dr. A. T. Pierson. Unknown chapter and page number.
15. The Case For Christ by Lee Strobel. Chapter 4, pg. 83, 84
16. Internet research found this information.
17. Internet research found this information.
18. Henry M. Morris, The Bible Has the Answer, p. 220
19. Christian Ethics in a Postmodern World, by Dr. James P. Eckman, Chapter 4, pg. 23